Nehemiah

translationNotes

v10

Copyrights & Licensing

Version: 10

Published: 2017-10-03

Table of Contents

translationNotes

Introduction to Nehemiah

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Nehemiah

1. Nehemiah's return to Jerusalem

   - How Nehemiah receives permission to return to Jerusalem (1:1–2:8)
   - Nehemiah begins to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem (2:9–2:20)

2. Rebuilding the walls of Jerusalem

   - Beginning at the Sheep Gate and attracting notice of enemies (3:1–32)
   - Sanballat and Tobiah threaten to stop the work on the walls (4:1–12)
   - The work proceeds under Nehemiah's leadership (4:13–23)

3. Nehemiah addresses mistreatment of the poor and provides an example of unselfishness (5:1–19)
4. Samaritans seek to slow the work of rebuilding the walls, but the walls are completed in fifty-two days (6:1–19)
5. A repeat of the counting of the people (7:6–70)
6. The renewal of the covenant with Yahweh (10:1–39)
7. A counting of the Jewish leaders in the region (11:1–36)
8. A counting of the priests and Levites (12:1–26)
9. The dedication of the walls of Jerusalem (12:27–47)
10. Correcting abuses and bringing reforms (13:1–31)

What is the Book of Nehemiah about?

The book of Nehemiah is about a Jew named Nehemiah. He lived in Persian and worked for the king. Nehemiah received a report about the condition of the wall around Jerusalem. In those times, the city wall was essential to the protection of the city against armies and invaders. Nehemiah returned to Jerusalem to help rebuild the city walls.

How should the title of this book be translated?

It is suggested that translators use a self-explanatory title or follow the regional or the national language versions of the Bible. "Nehemiah" is named for the events of the book which focus on the leadership of Nehemiah. One possible title is "The Book about Nehemiah." (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why were Israelites not allowed to marry people from other nations?

Foreigners worshiped many false gods. Yahweh did not allow his people to marry foreigners because he knew this would cause the people of Israel to worship other gods. (See: god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry)

Did all of the people of Israel return to their homeland?

Many of the Jews remained in Babylon instead of returning to the Promised Land. Many of them had become successful in Babylon and desired to remain there. However, this meant that they were unable to participate in the temple worship as their ancestors had done. . (See: Promised Land)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How does the Book of Nehemiah use the term "Israel"?

The Book of Nehemiah uses the term "Israel" to refer to the kingdom of Judah, which was composed mostly of the two tribes of Judah and Benjamin. The other ten tribes had ended their loyalty to any kings descended from David. God allowed the Assyrians to conquer the other ten tribes and take them into exile. As a result, they became a part of other ethnic groups and did not return to the land of Israel. (See: Israel, Israelites)

Are the events in the Book of Nehemiah told in the order that they actually happened?

Some of the events in the Book of Nehemiah are not told in the order they actually happened. Translators should pay attention to notes that signal when events are probably out of order with each other.

Nehemiah 01 General Notes

Structure and formatting

"The words of Nehemiah son of Hacaliah:"

This phrase serves as an introduction to this entire book.

Special concepts in this chapter

Repentance

This chapter is a single long record of Nehemiah's repentance on behalf of the people. (See: repent, repents, repented, repentance)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

I

While the author of this book is probably Ezra, the word "I" always refers to Nehemiah.

Israel

It is uncertain to whom "Israel" refers. It probably does not refer to the northern kingdom of Israel. Neither does it likely refer to the twelve tribes of Israel. Instead, it is probably a reference to Israel in the sense of the surviving people group. At Nehemiah's time, this people group exclusively comprised the tribe of Judah because the other tribes had already been scattered throughout the entire Near East, where they lost their identity, for the most part.

Links:

- **Nehemiah 01:01 Notes**
- **Nehemiah intro**

Nehemiah 1:1-2

UDB:

1 I am Nehemiah son of Hakaliah. I am writing this account of what I did when I returned to Jerusalem. During the twentieth year after King Artaxerxes began to rule the Persian Empire, in the month of Kislev. I was in Susa, the capital of Persia.

2 My brother Hanani came to see me. He and some other men were from Judah. I asked them questions about the small number of Jews who had escaped from the Babylonian exile, and about the city of Jerusalem.

ULB:

1 The words of Nehemiah son of Hakaliah:

Now it happened in the month of Kislev, in the twentieth year, as I was in the fortress of Susa, **2** that one of my brothers, Hanani, came with some people from Judah, and I asked them about the Jews who had escaped, the remnant of the Jews who were there, and about Jerusalem.

translationNotes

Nehemiah ... Hakaliah ... Hanani

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

in the month of Kislev

"Kislev" is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and How to Translate Names)

in the twentieth year

Nehemiah is referring to the number of years that Artaxerxes had been reigning as king. AT: "in the twentieth year of the reign of Artaxerxes, King of Persia" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Ordinal Numbers)

fortress of Susa

This was one of the royal cities of Persian kings, located in the country of Elam. It was a large, fortified city with high walls surrounding it.

one of my brothers, Hanani

Hanani was Nehemiah's biological brother.

Hanani, came with some people from Judah

"Hanani came from Judah with some other people"

the Jews who had escaped, the remnant of the Jews who were there

These two phrases refer to the same group of people. Possible meanings are 1) the few Jews who were taken as exiles to Babylon but escaped and returned to live in Jerusalem or 2) the few Jews who had escaped from those who were trying to take them into exile in Babylon and so remained in Jerusalem. Since it is unclear from where they escaped, it may be best not to specify in the translation. AT: "the Jews who had escaped the exile and who remained in Jerusalem" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- word, words
- Nehemiah
- son, sons
- year, years
- brother, brothers
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- remnant
- Jerusalem

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 01 General Notes
- Nehemiah 1 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 1:3

UDB:

3 They said to me, "The Jews who survived the captivity are living there in Judah with great difficulty and shame. The wall of the city was pushed down at many places so an army could easily come through it, and not only so, but the gates of the city have been completely destroyed by fire."

ULB:

3 They said to me, "Those in the province who survived the captivity are in great trouble and disgrace because the wall of Jerusalem has been broken open, and its gates have been set on fire."

translationNotes

They said to me

Here "They" refers to Hanani and the other people who had come from Judah.

the province

Here "province" refers to Judah as an administrative district under the Persian Empire. AT: "the province of Judah" or "Judah" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the wall of Jerusalem has been broken open, and its gates have been set on fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "armies have broken open the wall of Jerusalem and have set its gates on fire" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity
- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome
- Jerusalem
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 01 General Notes
- Nehemiah 1 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 1:4-5

UDB:

4 When I heard that, I sat down and cried. For many days I mourned and fasted, and I prayed to the God who is in heaven. **5** I said, "Yahweh, you are the God who is in heaven. You are the great and awesome God, and you keep your sacred bond and promise with everyone who loves you and who obeys your rules and commands.

ULB:

4 As soon as I heard these words, I sat down and wept, and for days I continued grieving and fasting and praying before the God of heaven. **5** Then I said, "You are Yahweh, God of heaven, the God who is great and awesome, who keeps the covenant and steadfast love with those who love him and keep his commandments.

translationNotes

Then I said

Nehemiah tells what he prayed. AT: "Then I said to Yahweh" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

who love him and keep his commandments

Since Nehemiah is speaking to Yahweh, the pronouns "him" and "his" can be translated as "you" and "your." AT: "who love you and keep your commandments" (See: First, Second, or Third Person)

translationWords

- word, words
- fast, fasts, fasted, fasting, fastings
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- God
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- awe, awesome
- covenant, covenants, new covenant

- love, loves, loving, loved
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 01 General Notes
- Nehemiah 1 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 1:6-7

UDB:

6 Now please look at me and listen to what I am praying. I pray during the day and at night for your Israelite people. I confess that we have sinned. Even I and my family have sinned against you. **7** We have acted very wickedly. Many years ago your servant Moses gave us your laws and all the decrees you commanded us to do, but we did not keep them.

ULB:

6 Listen to my prayer and open your eyes, so you may hear the prayer of your servant that I now pray before you day and night for the people of Israel your servants. I am confessing the sins of the people of Israel, which we have sinned against you. Both I and my father's house have sinned.
7 We have acted very wickedly against you, and we have not kept the commandments, the statutes, and the rules you commanded your servant Moses.

translationNotes

open your eyes

"look at me." Here "open your eyes" is a metaphor that represents paying attention to someone. AT: "pay attention to me" (See: Metaphor)

so you may hear the prayer of your servant

"so that you may hear the prayer that I, your servant, am praying." The word "servant" refers to Nehemiah. This is how a person would address his superior in order to show humility and respect.

day and night

By saying that he prays both during the day and during the night, Nehemiah emphasizes the frequency of his prayers. AT: "all the time" (See: Merism)

Both I and my father's house

Here the word "house" represents family. AT: "Both I and my family" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

- Israel, Israelites
- confess, confessed, confesses, confession
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- decree, decrees, decreed
- Moses

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 01 General Notes
- Nehemiah 1 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 1:8-9

UDB:

8 But please remember what you told your servant Moses. You said, 'If you do not live with faith and obedience before me, I will scatter you among the nations. **9** But if you return to me and obey my commands, even if you have been exiled to a very remote place, I will gather all of you up and bring you back to this place where I showed you how great and glorious I am.'

ULB:

8 Please call to mind the word you commanded your servant Moses, 'If you act unfaithfully, I will scatter you among the nations, **9** but if you return to me and follow my commandments and do them, though your people were scattered under the farthest skies, I will gather them from there and bring them to that place where I have chosen to make my name remain.'

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah continues praying to God.

Please call to mind

To "call to mind" is an idiom that means to remember. AT: "Please remember" (See: Idiom)

the word you commanded your servant Moses

The pronouns "you" and "your" refer to God.

If you act unfaithfully … scatter you … if you return … your people

The pronouns "you" and "your" are plural and refer to the Israelite people.

I will scatter you among the nations

Yahweh speaks of causing the Israelite people to live in other nations as if he scattered them like one would scatter seeds. AT: "I will cause you to live among the nations" (See: Metaphor)

though your people were scattered

This can be stated in active form. AT: "though I scattered your people" (See: Active or Passive)

under the farthest skies

Yahweh speaks of places on the earth that are very far away as being "under the farthest skies." AT: "to places very far away" (See: Idiom)

to that place where I have chosen … remain

This phrase refers to Jerusalem, where the temple was located. AT: "to Jerusalem, where I have chosen … remain" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

where I have chosen to make my name remain

Here the word "name" represents Yahweh himself. AT: "where I have chosen to dwell" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- word, words
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Moses
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- nation, nations
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- name, names, named

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 01 General Notes
- Nehemiah 1 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 1:10-11

UDB:

10 We are your servants. We are the people whom you have delivered from slavery by your very great power. You did that because you are able to do whatever you desire. **11** Yahweh, please hear my prayer, I who am your servant. Please hear the prayers of all your people who have great joy when they honor you for who you are and what you do. Now I pray you would give me success when I go to the king; and protect me as I make a request of the king that could put my life in jeopardy. Give me mercy."

I was serving as one of the most trusted servants to the king.

ULB:

10 Now they are your servants and your people, whom you have rescued by your great power and by your strong hand. **11** Yahweh, I beg you, listen now to the prayer of your servant and to the prayer of your servants who delight to honor your name. Now give success to your servant today, and grant him mercy in the sight of this man."

I served as cupbearer to the king.

translationNotes

General Information:

Nehemiah continues his prayer.

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in Nehemiah's prayer. Here he begins to make his request based on Yahweh's promise.

they are your servants

The word "they" refers to the Israelite people.

by your great power and by your strong hand

Here "hand" represents strength or power. Together, these two phrases form a doublet that emphasizes the intensity of Yahweh's power. AT: "by your great power and by your mighty strength" or "by your very powerful strength" (See: Metonymy and Doublet)

the prayer of your servant

Here "servant" refers to Nehemiah. This is how a person would address his superior in order to show humility and respect. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 1:6.

the prayer of your servants

Here "servants" refers to the rest of the Israelite people who would have been praying for Yahweh to act on behalf of his people and on behalf of Jerusalem.

who delight to honor your name

Here "name" represents Yahweh himself. AT: "who delight to honor you" (See: Metonymy)

grant him mercy in the sight of this man

Here "him" refers to Nehemiah, who refers to himself in the third person to express his humility before God, and "this man" refers to Artaxerxes, the king of Persia.

in the sight of this man

Nehemiah speaks of the king's attitude or disposition as if it were how the king viewed something. AT: "grant that the king will have mercy on me" (See: Metaphor)

I served as cupbearer to the king

This is background information about Nehemiah's role in the king's court. Your language may have a special way to mark background information. (See: Background Information)

translationWords

- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- people of God, my people
- power, powers
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- Yahweh
- beg, begged, begging, beggar
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- honor, honors
- name, names, named
- mercy, merciful
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- cupbearer, cupbearers
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 01 General Notes
- Nehemiah 1 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 02 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the account of the construction of the wall. Many scholars believe these chapters teach valuable lessons on leadership. (See: Nehemiah 2-6)

Special concepts in this chapter

Nehemiah's character

Apparently, Nehemiah's character made an impression on the king. It was very unusual for a king to be so concerned with one of his servants. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Cultural Customs

In ancient Persia, they thought it was important for their conquered peoples to practice their own cultural customs. It was thought that this independence promoted peace in their vast kingdom. The rebuilding of Jerusalem may have been seen as a way to allow for the Jewish cultural practices.

Yahweh's control

Yahweh is seen as very powerful. He is able to provide for his people, even through a foreign king. (See: people of God, my people)

Links:

- **Nehemiah 02:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 2:1-2

UDB:

1 In the month of Nisan during the twentieth year of the rule of King Artaxerxes, it was time to serve wine to him during a feast. I took the wine and gave it to the king. I had never looked sad when I was before the king. **2** But that day, the king looked at me and he said to me, "Why are you so sad? You do not look sick. Perhaps your spirit is troubled?" Then I was very afraid.

ULB:

1 In the month of Nisan, in the twentieth year of Artaxerxes the king, he selected wine, and I took the wine and gave it to the king. Now I had never before been sad in his presence. **2** But the king said to me, "Why is your face so sad? You do not appear to be ill. This must be sadness of heart." Then I became very much afraid.

translationNotes

In the month of Nisan

"Nisan" is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months)

in the twentieth year of Artaxerxes the king

"in the 20th year that Artaxerxes was king" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Nehemiah tells background information about his demeanor before the king. (See: Background Information)

But the king

"So the king"

Why is your face so sad

Here Nehemiah is referred to by his face because the face shows one's emotions. AT: "Why are you so sad" (See: Synecdoche)

This must be sadness of heart

This speaks of Nehemiah being sad as if his heart were sad, since the heart is often considered the center of emotions. AT: "You must be very sad" (See: Synecdoche)

Then I became very much afraid

As Nehemiah prepares to answer, he is afraid because he does not know how the king will respond.

translationWords

- year, years
- Artaxerxes
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- heart, hearts
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:3

UDB:

3 I replied, "O King, may you rule for many, many years! I am sad for a reason, because the city in which my ancestors are buried has been turned to rubble, and all the gates around the city have been burned to ashes."

ULB:

3 I said to the king, "May the king live forever! Why should not my face be sad? The city, the place of my fathers' tombs, lies in ruins, and its gates have been destroyed by fire."

translationNotes

May the king live forever

Nehemiah is showing honor to King Artaxerxes. Here "forever" is an exaggeration that refers to a long life. AT: "Long live the king" or "May the king have a long life" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

Why should not my face be sad?

Here Nehemiah uses this rhetorical question to tell the king that he has a reason to be sad. This can be written as a statement. AT: "I have very good reasons to be sad." (See: Rhetorical Question)

the place of my fathers' tombs

"the place where my ancestors are buried"

its gates have been destroyed by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "fire has destroyed its gates" or "our enemy has burned its gates" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

- ruin, ruins, ruined
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:4-6

UDB:

⁴ The king replied, "What do you want me to do for you?"

And before I answered him, I prayed to God in heaven. ⁵ Then I replied, "If you are willing to do it, and if I have pleased you, then you could send me to Jerusalem, where my ancestors are buried, so that I may rebuild the city."

⁶ The king (with queen sitting beside him) asked me, "If I allow you to go, how long will you be gone? And when will you return?" He gave me permisson to go as soon as I gave him the dates of my going there and coming back again.

ULB:

⁴ Then the king said to me, "What do you want me to do?" So I prayed to the God of heaven. ⁵ I replied to the king, "If it seems good to the king, and if your servant has done well in your sight, you could send me to Judah, to the city of my fathers' tombs, that I may rebuild it." ⁶ The king replied to me (and the queen was also sitting beside him), "How long shall you be away and when will you return?" The king was glad to send me when I gave him the dates.

translationNotes

I replied to the king

"Then I replied to the king"

your servant

Nehemiah refers to himself this way to show his submission to the king.

in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. AT: "in your judgment" (See: Metaphor)

the city of my fathers' tombs

"the city where my ancestors are buried"

that I may rebuild it

Nehemiah does not plan to do all of the building himself, but he will be the leader of the work. AT: "that I and my people may rebuild it" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- God
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- good, goodness
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place
- queen, queens

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:7-8

UDB:

⁷ I also said to the king, "As a reward for my faithful service to you, please give me letters addressed to the governors who oversee the area beyond the Euphrates River. Please give them orders to allow me to travel safely through their province on my way to and from Judah. ⁸ Also, please write a letter to Asaph, who manages all the timber in your forest, and tell him to make beams to repair the gates of the fortress next to the temple, and to repair the walls of the city, and the house in which I will live." The king did what I requested him to do, because God was helping me get what I needed for these repairs.

ULB:

⁷ Then I said to the king, "If it pleases the king, may letters be given to me for the governors in the Province Beyond the River so that they may permit me to pass through their territories on my way to Judah. ⁸ May there also be a letter for Asaph the keeper of the king's forest, so that he may give me timber to make beams for the gates of the fortress next to the temple, and for the wall of the city, and for the house in which I will live."

So because the good hand of God was on me, the king granted me my requests.

translationNotes

may letters be given to me

This may be stated in active form. AT: "may you give letters to me" (See: Active or Passive)

the Province Beyond the River

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa.

Asaph

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the good hand of God was on me

God's "good hand" represents his "favor." AT: "God's favor was upon me" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- epistle, letter, letters
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- temple
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- good, goodness
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:9-10

UDB:

9 I left to travel to Judah. The king sent some army officers and soldiers riding on horses to accompany me, to protect me. When we came to the region where the governors ruled, I gave them the letters from the king.

10 But when two government officials, Sanballat the Horonite and Tobiah the Ammonite servant, heard that I had arrived, they were very angry that someone had come to help the people of Israel.

ULB:

9 I came to the governors in the Province Beyond the River and gave them the king's letters. Now the king had sent with me officers of the army and horsemen. **10** When Sanballat the Horonite and Tobiah the Ammonite servant heard this, they were greatly displeased that someone had come who was seeking to help the people of Israel.

translationNotes

Sanballat the Horonite

Sanballat is the name of a man, and the Horonites were a people group. (See: How to Translate Names)

Tobiah the Ammonite servant

This man was likely a freed slave now serving as an officer in Ammon. (See: How to Translate Names)

heard this

"heard that I had arrived"

translationWords

- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- epistle, letter, letters
- horseman, horsemen
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ So I came to Jerusalem and stayed there three days. ¹² I went out of the city in the evening, and I took a few men with me. We only had one animal, the one that I was riding on. I said nothing to anyone about what God had inspired me to do in Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹¹ So I came to Jerusalem and was there three days. ¹² I arose in the night, I and a few men with me. I did not tell anyone what my God had put into my heart to do for Jerusalem. There was no animal with me, other than the one I was riding.

translationNotes

had put into my heart

Here Nehemiah's "heart" refers to his thoughts and will. AT: "had inspired me" or "had led me" (See: Metonymy)

There was no animal with me

"There were no animals with me"

translationWords

- Jerusalem
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- God
- heart, hearts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:13-14

UDB:

13 I passed through the Valley Gate and went outside of the city wall. Then I went around the city and passed by the well called the Jackal's Well. Then I proceeded to the Dung Gate. I inspected all the walls around Jerusalem and found they were all broken open, and the wooden gates all around the wall were burned to ashes. **14** Then I went to the Fountain Gate and to the pool called the King's Pool, but my donkey could not get through the narrow opening.

ULB:

13 I went out by night by the Valley Gate, toward the Jackal's Well and to the Dung Gate, and inspected the walls of Jerusalem, which had been broken open, and the wooden gates were destroyed by fire. **14** Then I went on to the Fountain Gate and to the King's Pool. The place was too narrow for the animal I was riding to pass through.

translationNotes

General Information:

A few men accompanied Nehemiah on this inspection, but he speaks in the first person because he was the primary person. (See: First, Second, or Third Person)

I went out by night by the Valley Gate

"At night, I went out through the Valley Gate"

Jackal

a wild dog

Dung Gate

Presumably, refuse was removed from the city through this gate.

which had been broken open, and the wooden gates were destroyed by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which Israel's enemies had broken open, and the wooden gates which their enemies had destroyed with fire" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- cistern, cisterns, well, wells
- dung, manure
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Jerusalem
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:15-16

UDB:

15 So I turned back and went along the Kidron Valley and I inspected the wall there before I turned back and entered the city again at the Valley Gate. **16** The city officials did not know where I had gone, or what I had done. I had not said anything about it to the Jewish leaders or the officials or the priests or any of the others who would do the repair work.

ULB:

15 So I went up that night by the valley and inspected the wall, and I turned back and entered by the Valley Gate, and so returned. **16** The rulers did not know where I went or what I did, and I had not yet informed the Jews, nor the priests, nor the nobles, nor the rulers, nor the rest who did the work.

translationNotes

So I went up … and I turned back

The other men with Nehemiah also followed him. AT: "So we went up … and we turned back" (See: Synecdoche)

by the Valley Gate

"through the Valley Gate"

the rest who did the work

This refers to the men who would later rebuild the walls. AT: "the others who would later do the work of rebuilding the walls" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- priest, priests, priesthood
- noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:17-18

UDB:

17 I said, "You all know very well the terrible things that have happened to our city. The city is lies in ruins, and even the gates are burned down. Come, let us do the work to rebuild the wall of Jerusalem. If we do that, we will no longer be ashamed of our city." **18** Then I told them about how God had kindly helped me when I talked to the king, and what the king had said to me.

They replied, "Let us get up and build!" So they got ready to do this good work.

ULB:

17 I said to them, "You see the trouble we are in, how Jerusalem lies in ruins and its gates have been destroyed by fire. Come, let us rebuild the wall of Jerusalem, so we will no longer be in disgrace." **18** I told them that the good hand of my God was on me and also about the king's words that he had spoken to me. They said, "Let us rise up and build." So they strengthened their hands for the good work.

translationNotes

You see the trouble

Here "you" is plural, referring to all the people mentioned in Nehemiah 02:16. (See: Forms of You)

its gates have been destroyed by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "how our enemies destroyed its gates by fire" (See: Active or Passive)

so we will no longer be in disgrace

"so we will no longer be ashamed"

the good hand of my God was on me

God's "good hand" represents his "favor." AT: "my God's favor was upon me" (See: Metonymy)

rise up and build

This is an idiom. AT: "begin building" (See: Idiom)

So they strengthened their hands for the good work

The phrase "strengthened their hands" means to prepare to do something. AT: "So they prepared do this good work" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome
- Jerusalem
- ruin, ruins, ruined
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- good, goodness
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- God
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- word, words
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 2:19-20

UDB:

19 But Sanballat, Tobiah the Ammonite servant, and Geshem the Arabian, heard about what we planned to do. They mocked and made fun of us. They said, "What is this work that you are doing? Are you rebelling against the king?"

20 But I replied, "The God who is in heaven will give us success. But you have no right to this city, you have no deed, you have no lawful claim to it, and you have no historic connection to the city of Jerusalem."

ULB:

19 But when Sanballat the Horonite, and Tobiah the Ammonite servant, and Geshem the Arabian heard about it, they mocked and ridiculed us, and they said, "What are you doing? Are you rebelling against the king?" **20** Then I answered them, "The God of heaven will give us success. We are his servants and we will arise and build. But you have no share, no right, and no historic claim in Jerusalem."

translationNotes

Sanballat … Tobiah

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 02:9-10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Geshem

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

What are you doing? Are you rebelling against the king?

These rhetorical questions are used to mock Nehemiah. These can be written as statements. AT: "You are acting foolishly! You should not be rebelling against the king!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

the king

This refers to Artaxerses, the king of Persia.

will arise and build

This is an idiom. AT: "will begin rebuilding" (See: Idiom)

But you have no share, no right, and no historic claim in Jerusalem

"But you have no share, legal right, or religious claim to Jerusalem"

translationWords

- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Arabia, Arabian, Arabians
- mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- God
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Jerusalem

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 03 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Priests

The priests worked on rebuilding the city. Normally, the priests were exempt from this type of work. Because they helped, it emphasizes that this is a holy work and something done for Yahweh. (See: priest, priests, priesthood, holy, holiness, unholy, sacred and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Cooperation

Everyone worked on this project. Many names are mentioned to emphasize the cooperation between the different families. Each was given a section of the wall to rebuild.

Links:

- **Nehemiah 03:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 3:1-2

UDB:

1 Then Eliashib, the high priest of Israel, working with the other priests, rebuilt the Sheep Gate. They set it apart for the honor of Yahweh, and set the doors of the gate in place. Then they rebuilt the wall as far as the Tower of the Hundred, and they set it apart to honor Yahweh. They also rebuilt the Tower of Hananel. **2** Next to them, men from Jericho were rebuilding. Next to them, Zaccur son of Imri, was rebuilding.

ULB:

1 Then Eliashib the high priest rose up with his brother priests, and they built the Sheep Gate. They consecrated it and set its doors in place. They consecrated it as far as the Tower of the Hundred and as far as the Tower of Hananel. **2** Next to him the men of Jericho worked, and next to them Zaccur son of Imri worked.

translationNotes

Then Eliashib the high priest rose up with his brother priests

"Then Eliashib the high priest came forward with his brothers, the priests"

Eliashib … Zaccur son of Imri

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Tower of the Hundred

"Tower of the 100" (See: Numbers)

Tower of Hananel

This is the name of a tower. It is likely named after a man named "Hananel." (See: How to Translate Names)

men of Jericho

This means that the men were from Jericho. AT: "men from Jericho" (See: Possession)

translationWords

- high priest
- brother, brothers
- priest, priests, priesthood
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Jericho
- works, deeds, work, acts
- son, sons

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:3-5

UDB:

3 The sons of Hassenaah built the Fish Gate. They laid in the wooden beams above the gates, and also set the doors in place. Then they affixed the bolt and the bars for a strong lock. **4** Next to them, Meremoth, the son of Uriah and grandson of Hakkoz, repaired the walls to make them strong. Next to him, Meshullam son of Berekiah and grandson of Meshezabel, repaired part of the wall. Next to him, Zadok son of Baana repaired part of the wall. **5** Next to him, Tekoites repaired part of the wall, but the leaders of Tekoa refused to do the work that their supervisors assigned to them.

ULB:

3 The sons of Hassenaah built the Fish Gate. They made beams for it, and set its doors, its bolts, and its bars. **4** Meremoth repaired the next section. He is the son of Uriah son of Hakkoz. Next to them Meshullam repaired. He is the son of Berechiah son of Meshezabel. Next to them Zadok repaired. He is the son of Baana. **5** Next to them the Tekoites repaired, but their leaders refused to do the work ordered by their supervisors.

translationNotes

Hassenaah ... Meremoth ... Uriah ... Hakkoz ... Meshullam ... Berechiah ... Meshezabel ... Zadok ... Baana

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

set its doors

"installed its doors" or "put its doors in place"

its bolts, and its bars

"its locks and bars." These locked the gates securely.

Meremoth repaired the next section ... Meshullam repaired ... Zadok repaired ... Tekoites repaired

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. AT: "Meremoth repaired the next section of the wall ... Meshullam repaired the wall ... Zadok repaired the wall ... Tekoites repaired the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

the Tekoites

These are people from the town of Tekoa. (See: How to Translate Names)

ordered by their supervisors

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that their supervisors had ordered them to do" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- son, sons
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Uriah
- Zadok
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Joiada son of Paseah, and Meshullam son of Besodeiah, repaired the Old Gate. They also put in their places the beams above the gate and put in the bolts and the bars for locking the gate. ⁷ Next to them Melatiah the Gibeonite and Jadon the Meronothite, who were men from Gibeon and Mizpah, made repairs on the portion where the governor of the province beyond the River lived.

ULB:

⁶ Joiada son of Paseah and Meshullam son of Besodeiah repaired the Old Gate. They made beams for it, and set its doors, its bolts, and its bars. ⁷ Next to them Melatiah the Gibeonite and Jadon the Meronothite, who were men from Gibeon and Mizpah, made repairs on the portion where the governor of the Province Beyond the River lived.

translationNotes

Joiada … Paseah and Meshullam … Besodeiah … Melatiah … Jadon

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

set its doors

"installed its doors" or "put its doors in place"

its bolts, and its bars

"its locks and bars." These locked the gates securely.

Gibeonite … Meronothite

Gibeonites and Meronothites are people groups. (See: How to Translate Names)

Gibeon and Mizpah

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Province Beyond the River

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- son, sons
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:8-10

UDB:

8 Next to him, Uzziel son of Harhaiah, and Hananiah, but they worked on a section of the wall as far as the Broad Wall. Harhaiah made things from gold, and Hananiah made perfumes. **9** Next to them, Rephaiah son of Hur, who ruled half of the district of Jerusalem, repaired part of the wall. **10** Next to him, Jedaiah son of Harumaph repaired part of the wall near his house. Next to him, Hattush son of Hashabneiah repaired part of the wall.

ULB:

8 Next to him Uzziel son of Harhaiah, one of the goldsmiths, repaired, and next to him was Hananiah, a maker of perfumes. They rebuilt Jerusalem as far as the Broad Wall. **9** Next to them Rephaiah son of Hur repaired. He was the ruler of half the district of Jerusalem. **10** Next to them Jedaiah son of Harumaph repaired next to his house. Next to him Hattush son of Hashabneiah repaired.

translationNotes

Uzziel … Harhaiah … Hananiah … Rephaiah … Hur … Jedaiah … Harumaph … Hattush … Hashabneiah

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

goldsmiths

A goldsmith is a person who makes gold jewelry and other gold objects.

goldsmiths, repaired … Hur repaired … Harumaph repaired … Hashabneiah repaired

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. AT: "goldsmiths, repaired the wall … Hur repaired the wall … Harumaph repaired the wall … Hashabneiah repaired the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

next to him was Hananiah, a maker of perfumes

Hananiah repaired the wall as well. AT: "next to him Hananiah, a maker of perfumes, repaired the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

perfumes

liquid substances that people put on their body in small amounts to smell pleasant

ruler

"chief administrator" or "leader"

half the district

"Half" means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

translationWords

- son, sons
- Jerusalem
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:11-12

UDB:

11 Malchijah son of Harim, and Hashub son of Pahathmoab, repaired a section of the wall, and also repaired the Tower of the Ovens. **12** Next to him, Shallum son of Hallohesh, who ruled the other half of the district of Jerusalem, repaired part of the wall. His daughters helped him with the work.

ULB:

11 Malchijah son of Harim and Hasshub son of Pahath-Moab repaired another section along with the Tower of the Ovens. **12** Next to them Shallum son of Hallohesh, the ruler of half the district of Jerusalem, repaired, along with his daughters.

translationNotes

Malchijah … Harim … Hasshub … Pahath-Moab … Shallum … Hallohesh

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

repaired another section … repaired, along with his daughters

These phrase refer to repairing the wall. AT: "repaired another section of the wall … repaired the wall, along with his daughters" (See: Ellipsis)

Shallum son of Hallohesh, the ruler

Shallum was the ruler, not Hallohesh.

ruler

"chief administrator" or "leader"

half the district

"Half" means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

translationWords

- son, sons
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- Jerusalem

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:13

UDB:

13 Hanun and people from the city of Zanoah repaired the Valley Gate. They put the gates in their places, and also put in the bolts and bars for locking the gate. They repaired the wall for 460 meters, as far as the Dung Gate.

ULB:

13 Hanun and the inhabitants of Zanoah repaired the Valley Gate. They rebuilt it and set its doors, its bolts, and its bars. They repaired a thousand cubits as far as the Dung Gate.

translationNotes

Hanun

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the inhabitants of Zanoah

"the people from Zanoah"

Zanoah

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Valley Gate

"the Gate of the Valley" or "the Gate that Leads to the Valley." Try to translate this expression as a name, not just as a description.

set its doors

"installed its doors" or "put its doors in place"

its bolts, and its bars

"its locks and bars." These locked the gates securely.

They repaired a thousand cubits as far as the Dung Gate

They repaired the portion of the wall between the Valley Gate and the Dung Gate. AT: "They repaired a thousand cubits of the wall, from the Valley Gate to the Dung Gate" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

They repaired a thousand cubits

It is understood that they were repaing the wall of Jerusalem. AT: "They repaired a thousand cubits of the wall" or "They repaired another thousand cubits of the wall beyond the Valley Gate" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a thousand cubits

"1,000 cubits." This may be written in modern measurements. AT: "460 meters" (See: Biblical Distance and Numbers)

the Dung Gate

Presumably, refuse was removed from the city through this gate. Try to translate this expression as a name, not just as a description.

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- dung, manure

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:14-15

UDB:

14 Malchijah son of Recab, who ruled the district of Beth Haccherem, repaired the Dung Gate. He also put in their places the bolts and bars for locking the gate.

15 Shallum son of Colhozeh, who ruled the district of Mizpah, repaired the Fountain Gate. He put a roof over the gate, and put in their places the gates and the bolts and the bars for locking the gate. Near the Pool of Siloam he built the wall next to the king's garden, as far as the steps that went down from the city of David.

ULB:

14 Malchijah son of Recab, the ruler of the district of Beth Hakkerem, repaired the Dung Gate. He built it and set its doors, its bolts, and its bars.

15 Shallun son of Kol-Hozeh, the ruler of the district of Mizpah, rebuilt the Fountain Gate. He built it, and put a cover on it and set its doors, its bolts, and its bars. He also rebuilt the wall of the Pool of Siloam by the king's garden, as far as the stairs leading down from the city of David.

translationNotes

Malchijah … Recab … Shallun … Kol-Hozeh

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Malchijah son of Recab, the ruler

Malchijah was the ruler, not Recab.

ruler

"chief administrator" or "leader"

Beth Hakkerem

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

He … set its doors

"He installed its doors" or "He put its doors in place"

its bolts, and its bars

"its locks, and its bars." These locked the gates securely.

Shallun son of Kol-Hozeh, the ruler

Shallun was the ruler, not Kol-Hozeh.

the wall of the Pool of Siloam

This means that the wall was beside the Pool of Siloam. AT: "the wall that surrounded the Pool of Siloam" (See: Possession)

translationWords

- son, sons
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- dung, manure
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- city of David

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:16-17

UDB:

16 Next to him, Nehemiah son of Azbuk, who ruled half of the district of Beth Zur, repaired the wall as far as the tombs in the city of David, to the pool that was man-made, and to the House of the Heroes.

17 Next to him, several descendants of Levi who helped the priests repaired parts of the wall. Rehum son of Bani repaired one section. Hashabiah, who ruled half of the district of Keilah, repaired the next section on behalf of the people of his district.

ULB:

16 Nehemiah son of Azbuk, the ruler of half the district of Beth Zur, repaired to the place across from the tombs of David, to the man-made pool, and to the house of the mighty men. **17** After him the Levites repaired, including Rehum son of Bani and next to him, Hashabiah, the ruler of half the district of Keilah, for his district.

translationNotes

Nehemiah ... Azbuk ... Rehum ... Bani ... Hashabiah

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Nehemiah son of Azbuk, the ruler

Nehemiah was the ruler, not Azbuk.

Nehemiah

This is a different man named Nehemiah from the person who authored this book.

ruler

"chief administrator" or "leader"

half the district

"Half" means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

Beth Zur ... Keilah

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

repaired to the place ... Levites repaired

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. AT: "repaired the wall up to the place ... Levites repaired the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

mighty men

"warriors"

for his district

"representing his district" or "on behalf of his district"

translationWords

- son, sons
- grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place
- David
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:18-19

UDB:

18 Binnui son of Henadad, who ruled the other half of the district of Keilah, repaired the next section along with other descendants of Levi. **19** Next to him, Ezer son of Jeshua, who ruled the city of Mizpah, repaired another section in front of the steps which went up to the armory, up to the point where there is a buttress at the corner of the wall.

ULB:

18 After him their countrymen repaired, including Binnui son of Henadad, the ruler of half the district of Keilah. **19** Next to him, Ezer son of Jeshua, the ruler of Mizpah, repaired another section that faced the ascent to the armory at the corner of the wall.

translationNotes

After him their countrymen repaired … repaired another section

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. AT: "Next to him their countrymen repaired the wall … repaired another section of the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

After him

"Next to him"

Binnui … Henadad … Ezer … Jeshua

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Binnui son of Henadad, the ruler

Binnui was the ruler, not Henadad.

Keilah … Mizpah

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ezer son of Jeshua, the ruler

Ezer was the ruler, not Jeshua.

that faced the ascent to the armory

"in front of the steps that went up to the armory"

armory

the place where weapons are kept

translationWords

- son, sons
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:20-21

UDB:

20 Next to him, Baruch son of Zabbai repaired a section of the wall with great enthusiasm. He worked on the section from the door of the house of Eliashib the high priest to the end of his house. **21** Next to him, Meremoth son of Uriah and grandson of Hakkoz repaired a section from the door of Eliashib's house to the end of his house.

ULB:

20 After him Baruch son of Zabbai devotedly repaired another section, from the corner of the wall to the door of the house of Eliashib the high priest. **21** After him Meremoth son of Uriah son of Hakkoz repaired another section, from the door of the house of Eliashib to the end of the house of Eliashib.

translationNotes

After him

"Next to him"

Baruch ... Zabbai ... Eliashib ... Meremoth ... Uriah ... Hakkoz

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

repaired another section

This refers to repairing the wall. AT: "repaired another section of the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

translationWords

- son, sons
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- high priest

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:22-24

UDB:

22 Next to him, several priests repaired parts of the wall. The priests from the area near Jerusalem repaired one section. **23** Next to them, Benjamin and Hasshub repaired a section in front of their house. Azariah son of Maaseiah and grandson of Ananiah, repaired the next section in front of his house. **24** Next to him, Binnui son of Henadad repaired a section, from Azariah's house to where the wall turns a bit.

ULB:

22 Next to him the priests, the men from the area around Jerusalem, repaired. **23** After them Benjamin and Hasshub repaired opposite their own house. After them Azariah son of Maaseiah son of Ananiah repaired next to his own house. **24** After him Binnui son of Henadad repaired another section, from the house of Azariah to the corner of the wall.

translationNotes

around Jerusalem, repaired ... Benjamin and Hasshub repaired ... Azariah ... repaired ... Binnui ... repaired

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. AT: "around Jerusalem, repaired the wall ... Benjamin and Hasshub repaired the wall ... Azariah ... repaired the wall ... Binnui ... repaired the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

Benjamin ... Hasshub ... Azariah ... Maaseiah ... Ananiah ... Binnui ... Henadad

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

After them ... After him

"Next to them ... Next to him"

opposite their own house

"in front of their own house"

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Jerusalem
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:25-27

UDB:

25 Next to him, Palal son of Uzai repaired a section, from where the wall turns and from where the watchtower is taller than the upper palace. The watchtower is near the courtyard where the guards lived. Next to Palal, Pedaiah son of Parosh repaired the wall. **26** Next to him the temple servants repaired a section facing the Water Gate on the east side of the tall tower. **27** Next to him, the Tekoites repaired a second section that was in front of the tall tower as far as the wall of Ophel.

ULB:

25 Palal son of Uzai repaired over against the corner of the wall and the tower that extends upward from the upper house of the king at the courtyard of the guard. After him Pedaiah son of Parosh repaired. **26** Now the temple servants living in Ophel repaired to the point opposite the Water Gate on the east and the projecting tower. **27** After him the Tekoites repaired another section that was opposite the great projecting tower as far as the wall of Ophel.

translationNotes

Palal … repaired … Parosh repaired … servants … repaired … repaired another section

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. AT: "Palal … repaired the wall … Parosh repaired the wall … servants … repaired the wall … repaired another section of the wall"

Palal … Uzai … Pedaiah … Parosh

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the tower that extends upward

"the tower that rises up"

upper house of the king

"higher palace of the leader of Israel"

the courtyard of the guard

This is the place where the guards stayed.

After him

"Next to him"

Ophel

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

opposite the Water Gate

"in front of the Water Gate"

the projecting tower … the great projecting tower

"the tall tower … the tall tower." The phrase "the projecting tower" means a tall tower that juts out from the wall. It is likely that both of these phrases refer to the same tower.

the Tekoites

These are people from the town of Tekoa. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:5. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- son, sons
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards
- temple
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- water, waters, watered, watering
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:28-30

UDB:

28 A group of priests repaired the wall north from the Horse Gate. Each one repaired the section in front of his own house. **29** Next to them, Zadok son of Immer repaired the section in front of his house. Next to him, Shemaiah son of Shecaniah, who was the gatekeeper at the east gate, repaired the next section. **30** Next to him, Hananiah son of Shelemiah, and Hanun the sixth son of Zalaph, repaired a section. That was the second section that they repaired. After him Meshullam son of Berechiah repaired the walls in the section that faced the rooms where he lived.

ULB:

28 The priests repaired above the Horse Gate, each opposite his own house. **29** After them Zadok son of Immer repaired the section opposite his own house. Then after him Shemaiah son of Shecaniah, the keeper of the east gate, repaired. **30** After him Hananiah son of Shelemiah, and Hanun the sixth son of Zalaph, repaired another section. After him Meshullam son of Berechiah repaired opposite his living chambers.

translationNotes

priests repaired … repaired the section … east gate, repaired … repaired another section … repaired opposite

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. AT: "priests repaired the wall … repaired the section of the wall … east gate, repaired the wall … repaired another section of the wall … repaired the wall opposite" (See: Ellipsis)

above the Horse Gate

The word "above" is used here because the priests' houses were likely located at a higher elevation than the Horse Gate.

opposite his own house

"in front of his own house"

After them … After him

"Next to them … Next to him"

Zadok … Immer … Shemaiah … Shecaniah … Hananiah … Shelemiah … Hanun … Zalaph … Meshullam … Berechiah

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shemaiah son of Shecaniah, the keeper of the east gate

Shemaiah was the keeper of the east gate, not Shecaniah.

the keeper of the east gate

"the person who looked after the east gate" or "the person who opened and closed the east gate"

the sixth son

"son 6" or "son number 6" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

opposite his living chambers

"in front of the rooms where he stayed." The word "his" refers to Meshullam.

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- Zadok
- son, sons
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 3:31-32

UDB:

31 Next to them, Malchijah, who also made things from gold, repaired a section as far as the building used by the temple servants and merchants, which was in front of the Appointment Gate and the upper apartments on the corner. **32** Other men who worked with gold, making beautiful things, along with merchants, repaired the last section of the wall as far as the Sheep Gate.

ULB:

31 After him Malchijah, one of the goldsmiths, repaired to the house of the temple servants and the merchants that was opposite the Appointment Gate and the upper living chambers on the corner. **32** The goldsmiths and the merchants repaired between the upper chamber of the corner and the Sheep Gate.

translationNotes

After him

"Next to him"

Malchijah

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

goldsmiths

A goldsmith is a person who makes gold jewelry and other gold objects.

repaired to the house … merchants repaired

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. AT: "repaired the wall to the house … merchants repaired the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

merchants

"sellers" or "traders"

upper living chambers

the higher-level rooms where people stayed

Sheep Gate

This is the name of an entranceway in the wall.

translationWords

- gold, golden
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- temple
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 04 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Dedication

The people were so dedicated to rebuilding the walls that they worked with their weapons ready for battle right next to them. Even when they were threatened with an attack, they continued to trust in Yahweh. (See: trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Sanballat uses a series of rhetorical questions. These are intended to show his intense anger against the Israelites. (See: Rhetorical Question)

Links:

- **Nehemiah 04:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 4:1-3

UDB:

1 When Sanballat heard that we were rebuilding the city wall, the fact that they were rebuilding Jerusalem burned like a fire within him, and he was furious and he spoke of the Jews with disgust. **2** While his counselors and officials of the army troops who had come from Samaria were listening he said, "These Jews can hardly stand on their own legs, what do they think they are doing? Will they rebuild the city and live in it themselves? Will they restore the temple and the all the sacrifices that the priests gave to Yahweh? Will they finish such a great work in only a day? Will they turn these burned and useless rocks into useful material to rebuilt the wall and will they bring life to the city again?

3 Tobiah was standing beside Sanballat. He said, "That wall they are building is so weak that even if a little fox climbed up on it, their stone wall would fall to the ground!"

ULB:

1 Now when Sanballat heard we were building the wall, it burned within him, and he was furiously angry, and he mocked the Jews. **2** In the presence of his brothers and the army of Samaria, he said, "What are these feeble Jews doing? Will they restore the city for themselves? Will they offer sacrifices? Will they finish the work in a day? Will they bring to life the stones from the piles of rubble after they were burned? **3** Tobiah the Ammonite was with him, and he said, "If only a fox went up on what they are building, it would break down their stone wall!"

translationNotes

Now when Sanballat

Here Nehemiah uses the word "now" to signal a new part of the story.

Sanballat ... Tobiah

These are the names of a men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

it burned within him, and he was furiously angry

Here "it" refers to Sanballat's realization that the Jews are rebuilding the walls. This speaks of Sanballat becoming very angry as if his anger were a burning fire. AT: "he became furiously angry" or "he became very angry" (See: Metaphor)

In the presence of his brothers

"In the presence of his kinsmen" or "In the presence of his clan"

What are these feeble … Will they restore … Will they offer … Will they finish the work in a day?

Sanballat poses these questions to mock the Jews. These can be written as statements. AT: "These feeble Jews can accomplish nothing. They will never restore the city for themselves. They will not offer sacrifices. They will not finish the work in a day." (See: Rhetorical Question)

feeble Jews

"weak Jews"

in a day

This speaks of not finishing something quickly by saying that it cannot be accomplished in a day. AT: "quickly" (See: Metaphor)

Will they bring to life the stones from the piles of rubble after they were burned?

Sanballat also poses this question to mock the Jews. This can be written as a statement. AT: "They will not bring to life again the stones from piles of rubble that were burned." (See: Rhetorical Question)

bring to life the stones from the piles of rubble after they were burned

This speaks of the people rebuilding the city as if they were bring it back to life. AT: "restore the city and rebuild its walls from the useless stones that were burned and turned into rubble" (See: Metaphor)

from the piles of rubble after they were burned

This can be stated in active form. AT: "from piles of rubble that someone had burned" (See: Active or Passive)

If only a fox went up on what they are building, it would break down their stone wall

Sanaballat mocks the wall and exaggerates how weak it is by saying that a fox could knock it down. AT: "That wall they are building is so weak that even if a little fox climbed up on it, their stone wall would fall to the ground" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at

- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- brother, brothers
- Samaria, Samaritan
- restore, restores, restored, restoration
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- works, deeds, work, acts
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- stone, stones, stoning
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 4:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Then I prayed. I said, "Our God, hear us, because they are ridiculing us! Cause the words of their insults to fall back on themselves! Allow their enemies to come and capture them and force them to go to a foreign land! ⁵ They are guilty. Do not take away their guilt and let them answer for the sin they committed before you. With their insults, they are making those who are rebuilding the walls become very angry!"

⁶ But after some time, the workers built the wall around the whole city to about half its total height. They were able to accomplish this because they wanted to do the best work they could do.

ULB:

⁴ Hear, our God, for we are despised. Turn back their taunts on their own heads and give them up to be plundered in a land where they are prisoners. ⁵ Do not cover over their iniquity and do not erase their sin from before you, for they have provoked the builders to anger. ⁶ So we built the wall and all the wall was joined together to half its height, for the people had a desire to work.

translationNotes

Hear, our God, … for they have provoked the builders to anger

Here Nehemiah is praying to God. This can be stated clearly and written with quotation marks. AT: "Then I prayed, 'Hear, our God, … for they have provoked the builders to anger'" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Hear, our God, for we are despised

Here the word "we" refers to the Jews. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Hear, our God, for our enemies despise us" (See: Active or Passive)

give them up to be plundered

This can be stated in active form. AT: "let their enemies rob them" (See: Active or Passive)

Turn back their taunts on their own heads

The phrase "their taunts" refers to Sanballat's and Tobiah's insults. Here the word "heads" refers to the whole people. AT: "Turn their taunts onto themselves" or "Cause their insulting words to mock themselves" (See: Synecdoche)

Do not cover over

This speaks of a forgiving a person's sins as if they were a object that could be physically hidden. AT: "Do not forgive" (See: Metaphor)

do not erase their sin from before you

This speaks of forgetting a person's sins as if they were something written that could be erased. AT: "do not forget their sins

they have provoked the builders to anger

"they have angered the builders"

So we built the wall

"So we rebuilt the wall"

all the wall was joined together to half its height

This can be stated in active form. AT: "we joined the wall together and it was half its total height" (See: Active or Passive)

half its height

"Half" means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

translationWords

- God
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
- iniquity, iniquities
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- anger, angered, angry
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 4:7-9

UDB:

7 But when Sanballat, Tobiah, the Arabians, the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites heard that the work on the wall was continuing and that we were filling in the gaps in the wall, they became very angry. **8** They all made a plan together to come and fight against the people of Jerusalem, and to cause confusion within it. **9** But we prayed to our God to protect us, and we put men around the walls to guard the city day and night because of these who were so angry with us for rebuilding the wall.

ULB:

7 But when Sanballat, Tobiah, the Arabians, the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites heard that the work of repairing the walls of Jerusalem was going forward, and that the broken places in the wall were being closed up, a great anger burned within them. **8** They all conspired together, and they came to fight against Jerusalem and to cause confusion in it. **9** But we prayed to our God and set a guard as protection against them day and night because of their threat.

translationNotes

a great anger burned within them

This speaks of the people being very angry as if their anger were something that burned inside them. AT: "they became very angry" or "they became enraged" (See: Metaphor)

against Jerusalem

Here "Jerusalem" refers to the people who live there. AT: "against the people of Jerusalem" (See: Metonymy)

set a guard as protection

"put men around the wall to guard the city"

translationWords

- Arabia, Arabian, Arabians
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites
- Ashdod, Azotus
- works, deeds, work, acts
- Jerusalem
- anger, angered, angry

- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 4:10-11

UDB:

10 Then the people of Judah started to say, "The men who are working on the wall have used up all their strength. There is too much heavy rubble that we must move away; we are not able to finish this work. It is too much for us.

11 Besides, our enemies are saying, 'Before the Jews see us, we will rush down on them and kill them and stop their work on the wall!'"

ULB:

10 Then the people of Judah said, "The strength of those who carry the burdens is failing. There is too much rubble, and we are not able to rebuild the wall."

11 Our enemies said, "They will not know or see until we come among them and kill them, and stop the work."

translationNotes

There is too much rubble

Rubble is "burned stone" or "broken rock" or "unusable stone."

They will not know or see until we come among them

"They will not see us coming until we are beside them"

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 4:12-14

UDB:

¹² The Jews who were living near our enemies came and told us many times, to warn us about the wicked plans our enemies were planning to carry out against us.

¹³ So I put people from each of the families to stand guard at the wall. They were put at the lowest points of the wall, at the places where the wall would be most easily crossed over. They would protect it with their swords, their spears, and their bows and arrows. ¹⁴ Then after I inspected everything, I summoned the leaders and other officials and many of the other people, and I said to them, "Do not be afraid of our enemies! Keep in mind God is great and glorious! And fight to protect your families, your sons and daughters, your wives, and your homes!"

ULB:

¹² At that time the Jews who lived near them came from all directions and spoke to us ten times, warning us about the schemes they were making against us. ¹³ So I positioned people in the lowest parts of the wall in the exposed areas. I positioned each family with their swords, spears, and bows. ¹⁴ Then I looked, and stood up, and I said to the nobles, and to the rulers, and to the rest of the people, "Do not be afraid of them. Call to mind the Lord, who is great and awesome. Fight for your families, your sons and your daughters, your wives, and your homes."

translationNotes

from all directions

This represents many directions. The word "all" is an exaggeration for represents "many." AT: "from many directions" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

spoke to us ten times

Here the number 10 is used to represent "many." AT: "spoke to us many times" (See: Metonymy)

in the exposed areas

"in the vulnerable areas"

I positioned each family

This refers to several people from each family, this likely does not include the women and children. AT: "I positioned people from each family" (See: Synecdoche)

Call to mind the Lord

the phrase "call to mind" means to remember. AT: "Remember the Lord" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- family, families
- sword, swords, swordsmen
- spear, spears, spearmen
- bow and arrow, bows and arrows
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- fear, fears, afraid
- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- awe, awesome

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 4:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Our enemies heard that we knew what they were planning to do and that God had spoiled all their plans to stop our work. So we all returned to work on the wall, at the same places we were working before.

¹⁶ But after that, only half of the men there were doing the work on the wall. The others stood there holding their spears, shields, bows and arrows, and wearing armor for protection. The leaders stood guard behind the people of Judah.

ULB:

¹⁵ It came about when our enemies heard that their plans were known to us, and God had frustrated their plans, all of us returned to the wall, each one to his work. ¹⁶ So from that time half of my servants worked only on rebuilding the wall, and half of them held spears, shields, bows, and wore armor, while the leaders stood behind all the people of Judah.

translationNotes

It came about

"It happened that"

their plans were known to us

This can be stated in active form. AT: "we knew about their plans" (See: Active or Passive)

my servants worked

"my young men worked"

half of my servants ... half of them

"Half" means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

the leaders stood behind all the people

"the leaders positioned themselves behind all the people"

translationWords

- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- God
- works, deeds, work, acts
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- spear, spears, spearmen
- shield, shields, shielded
- bow and arrow, bows and arrows
- armor, armory
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Judah, kingdom of Judah

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 4:17-18

UDB:

17 Those who were building the wall and those who carried the heavy loads on their backs, all of them built the wall with one hand and held a weapon in the other hand. **18** All who were building the wall had his sword fastened to his side. The man who would blow the trumpet if our enemies attacked was standing at my side.

ULB:

17 The same workers who were building the wall and carrying loads were also guarding their positions. Everyone worked with one hand, and with the other hand he held his weapon. **18** Every builder wore his sword on his side and that is how he worked. The one who sounded the trumpet stayed beside me.

translationNotes

Everyone worked with one hand, and with the other hand he held his weapon

This is an exaggeration. They did not always work with only one hand, but they always had their weapon with them so that they were prepared to protect themselves and those around them. (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

translationWords

- sword, swords, swordsmen
- works, deeds, work, acts
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 4:19-20

UDB:

19 Then I said to the officials, the other important men, and the other people, "This is a huge job, and we are far apart from each other along the wall. **20** If you hear the man blowing the trumpet, gather around at that place. Our God will fight for us!"

ULB:

19 I said to the nobles and to the officials and to the rest of the people, "The work is great and extensive, and we are separated on the wall, far from one another. **20** You must rush to the place where you hear the trumpet sound and assemble there. Our God will fight for us."

translationNotes

I said

Here "I" refers to Nehemiah.

the nobles ... the officials

These are the leaders referred to in Nehemiah 4:16.

The work is great

Here the word "great" means "large-scale" or "huge."

the trumpet sound

This refers to someone blowing a trumpet. AT: "someone blowing a trumpet" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 4:21-23

UDB:

21 So we continued to work. Half of the men continued to hold their spears all day, from when the sun rose in the morning until the stars appeared at night. **22** At that time, I also said to the people, "Tell every worker and his helper that they must stay inside Jerusalem at night. By doing that, they can guard us at night, and they can work on the wall during the daytime." **23** During that time, I did not put away my clothing, and I always carried my weapon The same was true of my brothers, my servants, and the men who followed me and served as guards. All of us did the same, even if we just went to get a drink of water.

ULB:

21 So we were doing the work. Half of them were holding spears from the rising of the dawn until the coming out of the stars. **22** I also said to the people at that time, "Let every man and his servant spend the night in the middle of Jerusalem, so they may be for us a guard during the night and a worker in the day." **23** So neither I, nor my brothers, nor my servants, nor the men of the guard who followed me, none of us changed our clothes, and each of us carried his weapon, even if he went for water.

translationNotes

Half of them

Here "Half" means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

from the rising of the dawn until the coming out of the stars

This refers to the whole day, while it is light outside. AT: "from the first light of day until the very beginning of the night"

the rising of the dawn

It is the point in time that the sun rises that is "dawn." Here the sun rising is spoken of as if the "dawn" rose. AT: "the rising of the sun" or "dawn" (See: Metonymy)

in the middle of Jerusalem

"within Jerusalem"

changed our clothes

"took off our clothes"

translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- spear, spears, spearmen
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Jerusalem
- brother, brothers
- water, waters, watered, watering

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 05 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Equality

The rich made money from the poor. The rich oppressed the poor by charging interest on loans. Because Nehemiah wanted to treat everyone fairly, he did not collect any taxes from them. This chapter also emphasizes that it was wrong to enslave a fellow Jew. (See: oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors)

Governor

Nehemiah was a governmental leader in Jerusalem, but he was not a king. Jerusalem had a great deal of independence, but it was under the authority of the Persian king. The term "governor" reflects this idea, but a different term may be used in translation.

Links:

- **Nehemiah 05:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 5:1-3

UDB:

1 Later, many of the men and their wives cried out for justice because of what some of the other Jews were doing. **2** Some of them said, "We have many children. So we need a lot of grain to be able to eat and stay alive."

3 Others said, "it has been necessary for us to mortgage the fields and vineyards and houses that we own so that we may get grain to eat during this famine."

ULB:

1 Then the men and their wives raised a great outcry against their fellow Jews. **2** For there were some who said, "With our sons and daughters we are many. So let us get grain that we may eat and stay alive." **3** There were also some who said, "We are mortgaging our fields, our vineyards, and our houses to get grain during the famine."

translationNotes

Then the men and their wives raised a great outcry against their fellow Jews

Since they were working on the wall, the workers did not have enough time to work to buy and grow food for their families. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the men and their wives

This refers to the men who were working on building the wall.

raised a great outcry

The word "outcry" can be expressed as a verb. AT: "cried out loudly" (See: Abstract Nouns)

We are mortgaging our fields

"We are having to pledge" or "We are having to give in pledge"

translationWords

- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- son, sons
- grain, grains, grainfields
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

- vineyard, vineyards
- famine, famines

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 5:4-5

UDB:

4 Others said, ”We have needed to borrow money to pay the taxes we owe the king for our fields and our vineyards. **5** We are Jews just like the other Jews. Our children are just as important to us as their children are to them. But we have been forced to sell our children to become slaves in order to pay what we owe. We have already sold some of our daughters to become slaves. Our fields and vineyards have been taken away from us, so now we do not have the money to pay what we owe.”

ULB:

4 Some also said, ”We have borrowed money to pay the king’s tax on our fields and our vineyards. **5** Yet now our flesh and blood is the same as our brothers, and our children are the same as their children. We are forced to sell our sons and our daughters to become slaves. Some of our daughters have already been enslaved. But it is not in our power to help it because other men now own our fields and our vineyards.”

translationNotes

Yet now our flesh and blood is the same as our brothers, and our children are the same as their children

Here the Jews are implying that they are of the same Jewish descent as the other Jews and that they of the same importance as the others. The meaning of this can be made clear. AT: “Yet our families are Jews just like the other Jew’s families, and our children are just as important to us as their children are to them” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

our flesh and blood

This is an idiom which refers to their family members. AT: “our family” (See: Idiom)

Some of our daughters have already been enslaved

This can be stated in active form. AT: “We have already sold some of our daughters into slavery” (See: Active or Passive)

But it is not in our power to help it because other men now own our fields and our vineyards

Since the mens’ fields and vineyards are not in their possession, they are unable to produce the money they need to support their families. The full meaning of this can be made clear. AT: “But we are unable to change this situation because other men now own our fields and our vineyards which we need to support our lives” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

it is not in our power

This is an idiom which means that they do not have the resources to do something. AT: "we are unable" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers
- vineyard, vineyards
- flesh
- brother, brothers
- children, child
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- power, powers

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 5:6-8

UDB:

6 I was very angry when I heard these things about which they were so concerned. **7** So I thought about what I could do about it. I told the leaders and officials, "You are charging interest to your own relatives when they borrow money from you. You know that is wrong!" Then I called together a large group of people to bring charges against them. **8** I said to them, "Some of our Jewish relatives have been forced to sell themselves to become slaves of the nations. As much as we have been able, we have been buying them back. But now you are even selling your own relatives so that they might be sold back to us, their fellow Jews!" When I said that to them, they were silent. They did not answer with even a single word.

ULB:

6 I was very angry when I heard their outcry and these words. **7** Then I thought about this, and brought charges against the nobles and officials. I said to them, "You are exacting interest, each from his own brother." I held a great assembly against them **8** and said to them, "We, as much as we are able, have bought back from slavery our Jewish brothers who had been sold to the nations, but you even sell your brothers and sisters that they may be sold back to us!" They were silent and never found a word to say.

translationNotes

when I heard their outcry

The word "outcry" can be expressed as a verb. AT: "when I heard them cry out" (See: Abstract Nouns)

You are exacting interest, each from his own brother

Every Jew would have known that it is wrong under the Law to charge interest to another Jew. The full meaning of this can be made clear. AT: "Each of you is charging interest to your own brother, and that is wrong under the Law" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I held a great assembly against them

This means that he brought together a large group of people and brought these charges against them. The meaning of statement this can be made clear. AT: "I held a great assembly and brought these charges against them" or "I held them on trial in front of the assembly" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

but you even sell your brothers and sisters that they may be sold back to us

This means that they are selling their family members as slaves to their fellow Jews. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "Now you are selling your own people to be slaves of your fellow Jews, so that they might later sell them back to us" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

who had been sold to the nations

This can be stated in active form. AT: "who people had sold as slaves to the nations" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- word, words
- brother, brothers
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- nation, nations
- sister, sisters

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 5:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Then I said to them, "What you are doing is terrible. Should you not obey God and do what is right? If you did, you would prevent our enemies from treating us with disrepect. ¹⁰ I and my fellow Jews and my servants have lent money and grain to people. But let us all stop charging interest on any of these loans. ¹¹ Also, you must give back to them their fields, their vineyards, their olive tree orchards, and their houses that you have taken from them. You must also give back to them the interest that you charged them when they borrowed money, grain, wine, and olive oil from you. You must do this today!"

ULB:

⁹ Also I said, "What you are doing is not good. Should you not walk in the fear of our God to prevent the taunts of the nations that are our enemies? ¹⁰ I and my brothers and my servants are lending them money and grain. But we must stop charging interest on these loans. ¹¹ Return to them this very day their fields, their vineyards, their olive orchards, and their houses and the percentage of the money, the grain, the new wine, and the oil that you exacted from them."

translationNotes

Also I said

The pronoun "I" refers to Nehemiah.

What you are doing

"You" here refers to the Jewish nobles.

Should you not walk in the fear of our God to prevent the taunts of the nations that are our enemies?

This is a rhetorical question that Nehemiah is using to scold the nobles. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should walk in the fear of our God to prevent the taunts of the nations that are our enemies." (See: Rhetorical Question)

walk in the fear of our God

This is and idiom. Here "walk" refers to a person's behavior and the way he lives. AT: "live your life in a way that honors God" (See: Idiom)

the taunts of the nations that are our enemies

The word "taunt" means "slander" or "mockery" and it can be expressed as a verb. AT: "the nations who are our enemies from taunting us" or "the enemy nations from mocking us" (See: Abstract Nouns)

lending

borrowing or giving something to someone expecting repayment

loans

This is any money, food, or property that one person could let another person borrow in order to repay debts. The borrower would then be indebted to the lender.

percentage

A part of the value of the loan that the borrower was charged in interest.

you exacted from them

"you charged them" or "you made them pay"

translationWords

- good, goodness
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- fear, fears, afraid
- God
- nation, nations
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- brother, brothers
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- vineyard, vineyards
- olive, olives
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 5:12-13

UDB:

12 The leaders replied, "We will do what you have said. We will return to them everything that we forced them to give to us, and we will not require that they give us anything more."

Then I summoned the priests, and I made them give an oath that they would do what they promised. **13** I shook out the folds of my robe and said to them, "If you do not do what you have just now promised to do, I hope that God will shake you like I am shaking my robe."

They all replied, "Amen, let it be so!" And they praised Yahweh. Then they did what they had promised to do.

ULB:

12 Then they said, "We will return what we took from them, and will require nothing from them. We will do as you say." Then I called the priests, and made them swear to do as they had promised. **13** I shook out the fold of my robe and said, "So may God shake out of his house and possessions every man who does not keep his promise. So may he be shaken out and emptied."

All the assembly said, "Amen," and they praised Yahweh and the people did as they had promised.

translationNotes

Then they said

Here "they" refers to the Jewish leaders.

We will return what we took from them

The Jewish leaders are saying they will return the money which the poorer Jews paid in interest charges.

made them swear

Here the word "them" refers to the Jewish leaders.

Then I called

"I" refers to Nehemiah.

I shook out the fold of my robe

"I shook out the pockets of my robe." Many times in the Old Testament, oaths were physically demonstrated as a witness to what was promised. Nehemiah is demonstrating to the Jewish leaders what will happen if they break the promise they had made. (See: Symbolic Action)

So may God shake out of his house … So may he be shaken out and emptied

Here Nehemiah speaks of God taking away all of a man's possessions as if God were shaking him out of his home and possessions like Nehemiah shook out his robe. AT: "So may God take away from every man who does not keep his promise all of his possessions and his home like I have taken everything out of the fold of my robe" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- promise, promises, promised
- robe, robes, robed
- God
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- promise, promises, promised
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- amen, truly
- praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy
- Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 5:14-15

UDB:

14 I was appointed to be the governor of Judea in the twentieth year that Artaxerxes was the king of Persia. From that time until the thirty-second year, during those twelve years neither I nor my officials accepted the money that we were allowed to receive to buy food because of my being the governor. **15** The men who were governors before me had burdened the people by requiring them forty silver coins each day for their food and wine. Even their servants oppressed the people. But I did not do that, because I wanted to give honor and respect to God.

ULB:

14 So from the time I was appointed to be their governor in the land of Judah, from the twentieth year until the thirty-second year of Artaxerxes the king, twelve years, neither I nor my brothers ate the food provided for the governor. **15** But the former governors who were before me laid heavy burdens on the people, and took from them forty shekels of silver for their daily food and wine. Even their servants oppressed the people. But I did not do so because of the fear of God.

translationNotes

from the time I was appointed

Here "I" refers to Nehemiah.

from the twentieth year until the thirty-second year

"from the 20th year until the 32 year" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

of Artaxerxes the king

"that Artaxerxes was king"

twelve years

"12 years" or "during those 12 years." Nehemiah is restating the number of years to emphasize that he did this continually for the full time he was governor. (See: Numbers)

the food provided for the governor

This can be stated in active form. AT: "ate the food that the people provided for the governor"

for their daily

"every day for their"

former governors

"previous governors" or "governors from the past." Nehemiah was not the first governor of Judah.

forty shekels

"40 shekels" or "40 silver coins" (See: Numbers and Biblical Money)

But I did not do so because of the fear of God

"But because my fear of God I did not take the food" or "But I did not take the food because I feared God"

translationWords

- appoint, appoints, appointed
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Artaxerxes
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- brother, brothers
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome
- silver
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
- fear, fears, afraid
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 5:16-17

UDB:

16 I also continued to work on this wall, and we did not buy any land from the people. All those who worked for me joined me to work on the wall. **17** Also, every day I was responsible to feed at our table the Jews and the officials, one hundred and fifty people; and we also fed the visitors who came from other countries around us.

ULB:

16 I also continued to work on the wall, and we bought no land, and all my servants were gathered there for the work. **17** At my table were the Jews and the officials, 150 men, besides those who came to us from among the nations who were around us.

translationNotes

I also continued

"I" refers to Nehemiah.

we bought

The word "we" refers to Nehemiah and his servants.

all my servants were gathered

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I gathered all of my servants there" (See: Active or Passive)

for the work

"to work on the wall"

150 men

"one hundred and fifty men" (See: Numbers)

At my table were the Jews ... from among the nations who were around us

Nehemiah was responsible for providing food for all of these people. This can be stated clearly. AT: "Also, every day I was responsible to feed at our table the Jews and the officials, 150 people; and we also fed the visitors who came from other countries around us (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

my table

This refers to the governor's table. It was a communal table for the community and for discussion of issues.

officials

"government leaders"

translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- nation, nations

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 5:18-19

UDB:

18 Each day I told my servants to serve us the meat from one ox, six very good sheep, and birds. And every ten days I gave them a large new supply of wine. But I knew that the people were burdened by paying a great deal of money for taxes, so I did not accept the money that I was entitled to as governor.

19 My God, think of me, and reward me for all that I have done for this people.

ULB:

18 Now what was prepared each day was one ox, six choice sheep, and also birds, and every ten days all kinds of wine in abundance, yet for all this I did not demand the food allowance of the governor, because the demands were too heavy on the people.

19 Call me to mind, my God, for good, because of all that I have done for this people.

translationNotes

Now what was prepared each day was

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Each day I told my servants to prepare" or "Each day I told my servants to serve us the meat from" (See: Active or Passive)

six choice ... ten days

"6 choice ... 10 days" (See: Numbers)

wine in abundance

"enough wine for everyone"

yet for all this I did not demand the food allowance of the governor

"yet I never asked for the governor's food allowance"

Call me to mind

This is an idiom. It is a request for God to think about him and remember him. AT: "Remember me" (See: Idiom)

for good

This idiom is a request for God to reward him with good things because of the good that he has done for the people. AT: "and reward me" or "cause good to happen to me" (See: Idiom)

translationWords

-
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- God
- good, goodness

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 06 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The building of the wall is completed in this chapter.

The ULB indents the lines in 6:6-7 because they are part of a long quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Miracle

Completing this city wall in only fifty-two days was considered proof that God had helped the Jews, especially given the opposition that they had experienced from the people in surrounding areas.

Links:

- **Nehemiah 06:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 6:1-2

UDB:

1 Sanballat, Tobiah, Geshem, and our other enemies heard a report that we had finished rebuilding the wall, and that now there were no more gaps, although we had not yet replaced the doors in the gates. **2** So Sanballat and Geshem sent me a message that read, "Come and talk with us at a place in the plain of Ono north of Jerusalem." But it was no secret that they wanted to harm me.

ULB:

1 Now when Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem the Arabian and the rest of our enemies heard that I had rebuilt the wall and that there were no longer any sections left broken open, although I had not yet set up the doors in the gates, **2** Sanballat and Geshem sent to me saying, "Come, let us meet together somewhere in the plain of Ono." But they intended to do harm to me.

translationNotes

Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:9-10. (See: How to Translate Names)

I had rebuilt the wall … I had not yet

Nehemiah supervised the rebuilding of the wall and did not build it by himself. AT: "we had rebuilt the wall … we had not yet" (See: Synecdoche)

any sections

This refers to sections of the wall. AT: "any sections of the wall" or "any gaps in the city wall" (See: Ellipsis)

sent to me

This means that they sent a messenger with a message. AT: "sent a messenger to me" (See: Idiom)

Ono

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Arabia, Arabian, Arabians
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 6:3-4

UDB:

3 So I sent messengers to them, to tell them, "I am doing an important work, and I cannot go down there. This work should not be delayed just so I can go down to talk with you. **4** They sent me the same message four times, and each time when I replied to them I said the same thing.

ULB:

3 I sent messengers to them, saying, "I am doing a great work, and I cannot come down. Why should the work stop while I leave it and come down to you?" **4** They sent me the same message four times, and I answered them the same way each time.

translationNotes

I am doing a great work

Nehemiah supervised the rebuilding of the wall. He did not build it by himself. AT: "We are doing a great work" (See: Synecdoche)

Why should the work stop while I leave it and come down to you?

This rhetorical question is used to challenge Sanballat's request. This can be written as a statement. AT: "I cannot let the work stop and come down to you" (See: Rhetorical Question)

down to you

The word "down" is used here because the plain of Ono where they were requesting Nehemiah to come is at a lower elevation than Jerusalem.

translationWords

- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- messenger, messengers
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 6:5-6

UDB:

[5] Then Sanballat sent one of his servants to me, bringing a fifth message. This one was written, but it was not sealed and he held it in his hand. [6] This is what was written in the message:

"Some people in the nearby countries have heard a report that you and the other Jews are rebuilding the wall in order to be able start a rebellion against the king of Babylon, and that you are planning to become the king of the Israel. Geshem has told us that this is the truth.

ULB:

[5] Sanballat sent his servant to me in the same way the fifth time, with an open letter in his hand. [6] In it was written,

"It is reported among the nations, and Geshem also says it, that you and the Jews are planning to rebel, for that is why you are rebuilding the wall. From what these reports say, you are about to become their king.

translationNotes

Sanballat sent his servant to me in the same way the fifth time

Identifying this message separately means it is distinct in some way from the previous four messages and, therefore, should be noted. AT: " Sanballat sent his servant to me in the same way yet again" or "Sanballat sent his servant to me to deliver a fifth message" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

an open letter

The letter was an unsealed diplomatic communication. This was an insult to the recipient because the courier was free to read it and spread its contents among the people of the region.

in his hand

This means he had the letter in his possession, but he did not necessarily carry it in his hand at all times. AT: "in his possession" (See: Metonymy)

It is reported among the nations

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The rumor in the region is" (See: Active or Passive)

are planning to rebel

This means that they are planning to rebel against Artaxerxes, the Persian king, who was currently ruling the Jews. AT: "are planning to rebel against Artaxerxes" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- epistle, letter, letters
- written
- report, reports, reported
- nation, nations
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 6:7

UDB:

⁷ People are also saying that you have appointed some prophets to proclaim in Jerusalem that you, Nehemiah, are now the king in Judea. King Artaxerxes will certainly hear these reports, and then you will be in big trouble. So I suggest that we should meet together to talk about this matter."

ULB:

⁷ You have also appointed prophets to make this proclamation about you in Jerusalem, saying, 'There is a king in Judah!' You can be sure the king will hear these reports. Therefore come, let us speak with one another."

translationNotes

the king will hear

"King Artaxerxes will hear"

Therefore come

"Therefore come meet with us"

translationWords

- appoint, appoints, appointed
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jerusalem
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- report, reports, reported

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 6:8-9

UDB:

8 When I read that message, I sent the messenger back to Sanballat to say, "None of what you are saying is true. You have made this up in your own imagination." **9** I said that because I knew that they were trying to cause us to be afraid, so that they thought, "They will become so discouraged that they will not work on the wall any more, and the work will never be finished." So I prayed, "O God, give me courage."

ULB:

8 Then I sent word to him saying, "No such things have occurred as you say, for within your heart you invented them." **9** For they all wanted to make us afraid, thinking, "They will drop their hands from doing the work, and it will not be done." But now, God, please strengthen my hands.

translationNotes

Then I sent word to him

Here "I" refers to Nehemiah and "him" to Sanballat.

No such things have occurred as you say

"None of the things you have written have occurred"

for within your heart you invented them

Here the "heart" refers to the "mind," that is, to one's desires and thoughts. AT: "for within your mind you invented them" or "for you have made this up in your own imagination" (See: Metonymy)

For they all wanted to make us afraid

Here "they" refers to Nehemiah's enemies, Sanballat, Tobiah, Geshem, and their followers. The word "us" refers to the Jews.

They will drop their hands from doing the work

This is a descriptive phrase that means that they are stopping their work on the wall. AT: "The workers on the wall will stop doing the work" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

strengthen my hands

Here Nehemiah requests for God to strengthen him by asking him to strengthen his "hands." AT: "strengthen me" or "give me courage" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- heart, hearts
- fear, fears, afraid
- works, deeds, work, acts
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 6:10-11

UDB:

10 One day I went to talk with Shemaia son of Delaiah and grandson of Mehetabel. I went to talk with him in his house. He was ordered not to leave his house. He said to me, "You and I must enter the temple, and we must go to one of the rooms in the center of the temple, and lock the doors. They are going to come to kill you. They are coming tonight to kill you."

11 I replied, "I am not that kind of person! I would not run and hide in the temple to save my life! No, I will not do that!"

ULB:

10 I went to the house of Shemaiah son of Delaiah son of Mehetabel, who was confined in his home. He said, "Let us meet together in the house of God, inside the temple, and let us close the doors of the temple, for they are coming to kill you. At night they are coming to kill you." **11** I replied, "Would a man like me run away? Would a man like me go into the temple just so he could save his own life? I will not go in!"

translationNotes

Shemaiah ... Delaiah ... Mehetabel

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

who was confined in his home

The writer does not give the reason for him being confined, so it is best to say that he was staying at home using the most general words possible. AT: "who could not leave his house" or "whom the authorities had ordered to stay in his house" (See: Active or Passive)

Would a man like me run away? Would a man like me go into the temple just so he could save his own life?

Nehemiah uses these rhetorical questions to emphasize that he will not do what Shemaiah has suggested. These questions may be written as statements. AT: "A man like me would not run away. A man like me would not go into the temple just to hide to stay alive." (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- temple
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 6:12-14

UDB:

[12] I thought about what he had said, and I saw that God had not told Shemaiah what to say to me. Tobiah and Sanballat had hired him. [13] They had hired him to frighten me. They wanted me to disobey God's commands and sin by hiding in the temple. If I did that, they would give me a bad name for what I had done, and then they would humiliate me.

[14] So I prayed, "My God, do not forget what Tobiah and Sanballat have done. And do not forget the prophetess Noadiah and the other prophets who tried to make me be afraid."

ULB:

[12] I realized that it was not God who sent him, but that he had prophesied against me. Tobiah and Sanballat had hired him. [13] They hired him to make me afraid, so that I might do what he said and sin, so they could give me a bad name in order to humiliate me. [14] Call to mind Tobiah and Sanballat, my God, and all that they did. Also call to mind the prophetess Noadiah and the rest of the prophets who tried to make me be afraid.

translationNotes

but that he had prophesied against me

"but that he had prophesied in order to oppose me"

and sin

Using the temple as a place to hide was sinful. It may be helpful to make this explicit. AT: "and sin by misusing the temple"

a bad name

This is an idiom. AT: "so that they could give me a bad reputation" or "so that they could give a bad report about me" (See: Idiom)

Call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "Remember"

Noadiah

This is the name of a woman. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- God
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- fear, fears, afraid
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- name, names, named
- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 6:15-16

UDB:

15 We finished rebuilding the wall in the month of Elul, on the twenty-fifth day of the month. We did all the work in fifty-two days. **16** When our enemies in the nearby countries heard about that, they became very afraid and they were humiliated, because they knew it was God who helped us complete this work.

ULB:

15 So the wall was finished on the twenty-fifth day of the month of Elul, after fifty-two days. **16** When all our enemies heard of it, all the nations around us, they became afraid and they fell greatly in their own eyes. For they knew the work was done with the help of our God.

translationNotes

So the wall was finished

This can be stated in active form. AT: "We finished the wall" (See: Active or Passive)

the twenty-fifth day of the month of Elul

"day 25 of the month of Elul." Elul is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

fifty-two days

"52 days" (See: Numbers)

they fell greatly in their own eyes

"they thought much less of themselves" or "they lost confidence in themselves"

the work was done with the help of our God

This can be stated in active form. AT: "it was our God who helped us complete this work" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- day, days
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

- nation, nations
- fear, fears, afraid
- works, deeds, work, acts
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 6:17-19

UDB:

17 During this time, the Jewish leaders had been sending many messages to Tobiah, and Tobiah had been sending messages back to them. **18** Many people in Judea had sworn their allegiance to Tobiah. He was the son-in-law of Shecaniah son of Arah, and Tobiah's son Jehohanan married the daughter of Meshullam son of Berekiah. **19** People often talked in my presence about all the good deeds that Tobiah had done, and then they would tell him everything that I said. So Tobiah sent many letters to me to try to cause me to become afraid.

ULB:

17 At this time the nobles of Judah sent many letters to Tobiah, and Tobiah's letters came to them. **18** For there were many in Judah who were bound by an oath to him, because he was the son-in-law of Shecaniah son of Arah. His son Jehohanan had taken as his wife the daughter of Meshullam son of Berechiah. **19** They also spoke to me about his good deeds and reported my words back to him.

Letters were sent to me from Tobiah to frighten me.

translationNotes

sent many letters

The nobles sent messengers to bring these letters to Tobiah. AT: "sent many messengers with letters" (See: Metonymy)

Tobiah's letters came

Here Tobiah's letters are personified as coming by themselves, when they were actually brought by messengers. AT: "Tobiah sent letters" or "Tobiah sent many messengers with letters" (See: Personification)

Tobiah

See how you translated this man's name in Nehemiah 2:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

who were bound by an oath to him

This speaks of people being loyal to Tobiah because they had pledged an oath to him as if their oath were a rope that bound their bodies. AT: "who had sworn an oath to him" or "who had made an oath and were loyal to him" (See: Metaphor)

he was the son-in-law of Shecaniah

This means that Tobiah was married to the daughter of Shecaniah. See how you translated "Shecaniah" in Nehemiah 3:29. (See: How to Translate Names)

Arah ... Jehohanan

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meshullam ... Berechiah

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

They also spoke to me about his good deeds and reported my words back to him

"The Jewish nobles told me about Tobiah's good deeds and then told him about my responses"

Letters were sent to me from Tobiah

This can be stated in active form. Tobiah sent messengers to bring the letters to Nehemiah. AT: "Tobiah sent letters to me" or "Tobiah sent messengers to bring letters to me" (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

translationWords

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- epistle, letter, letters
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- son, sons
- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- report, reports, reported
- word, words

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 06 General Notes
- Nehemiah 6 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 07 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Genealogy

The people who returned from Persia were counted according to their families. Nehemiah ensured that those who lived in Jerusalem had a completely Jewish ancestry.

Different lists

This list is paralleled in Esra Ezra 2. The lists do contain some differences in numbers. This is probably due to the timing of their counting. They were likely counted at different times.

Links:

- **Nehemiah 07:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 7:1-2

UDB:

1 After the wall had been finished and we had put the gates in their places, we assigned to the temple guards and to the members of the sacred choir and the other descendants of Levi the work that they were to do. **2** I appointed my brother Hanani as governor of Jerusalem. He was a faithful man who respected God and honored him, more than many others. In addition, Hananiah was appointed commander of the fortress there in Jerusalem.

ULB:

1 When the wall was finished and I had set up the doors in place, and the gatekeepers and singers and Levites had been appointed, **2** I gave my brother Hanani charge over Jerusalem, along with Hananiah who had oversight of the fortress, for he was a faithful man and feared God more than many.

translationNotes

When the wall was finished

This can be stated in active form. AT: "When we had finished the wall" (See: Active or Passive)

I had set up the doors in place

This was done with help. AT: "I and others hung the doors" (See: Synecdoche)

the gatekeepers and singers and Levites had been appointed

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are: 1) Nehemiah appointed them. AT: "I assigned the gatekeepers and singers and Levites to their tasks" or 2) Someone else appointed them. AT: "they assigned the gatekeepers and singers and Levites to their tasks" (See: Active or Passive)

gatekeepers

people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator

singers

vocal musicians who led in worship, in processions, and ceremonies, producing music and chants that emphasized and enhanced the occasion

Hanani ... Hananiah

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

I gave my brother Hanani charge

"I gave the order for my brother Hanani to be the manager"

who had oversight of the fortress

"who was in charge of the fortress"

feared God more than many

"feared God more than many other people"

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- brother, brothers
- Jerusalem
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- fear, fears, afraid
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:3-4

UDB:

3 I said to them, "Do not open the gates of Jerusalem until the sun is hot. And close the gates and put the bars across the doors only when gatekeepers are guarding the gates." I also told them to appoint some people who live in Jerusalem to be guards, and to assign some of them to guard stations around the city, and some would guard near their own houses."

4 The city of Jerusalem covered a large area, but at that time not many people lived in the city, and they had not rebuilt any of the houses.

ULB:

3 I said to them, "Do not open the gates of Jerusalem until the sun is hot. While the gatekeepers are on guard, you may shut the doors and bar them. Appoint guards from those who live in Jerusalem, some at the place of their guard station, and some in front of their own homes." **4** Now the city was wide and large, but there were few people within it, and no houses had yet been rebuilt.

translationNotes

I said to them

The word "them" refers to Hanani and Hananiah.

Do not open the gates of Jerusalem until the sun is hot. While the gatekeepers are on guard, you may shut the doors and bar them

Possible meanings are 1) these actions were done by Hanani and Hananiah or 2) these actions were done by Hanani and Hananiah with the help of the gatekeepers or 3) the gatekeepers did these actions under the direction of Hanani and Hananiah.

the sun is hot

"the sun is high in the sky"

While the gatekeepers are on guard, you may shut the doors and bar them

"Shut the doors and bar them while the gatekeepers are still on guard"

gatekeepers

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1

shut the doors and bar them

"close the gates and lock them"

Appoint guards from those who live in Jerusalem

"Assign guards from those people who live in Jerusalem"

guard station

"guard post" or "guard duty place"

no houses had yet been rebuilt

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the people had not yet rebuilt the houses" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Jerusalem
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:5

UDB:

⁵ God gave me the idea to summon the leaders and officials and other people, and to enroll them by their families in the books of the records of the families. I also found the records of the people who had been the first ones to return to Jerusalem. This is what I found written in those records.

ULB:

⁵ My God put into my heart to gather together the nobles, the officials, and the people to enroll them by their families. I found the book of the genealogy of those who returned at the first and found the following written in it.

translationNotes

put into my heart

Here Nehemiah's "heart" refers to his thoughts and will. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:12. AT: "inspired me" or "led me" (See: Metonymy)

to enroll them

"to list and register them"

the book of the genealogy

This was a book that no longer exists.

found the following written in it

This can be expressed in active form. AT: "found that someone had written the following in it" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- God
- heart, hearts
- family, families
- written

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:6-7

UDB:

6 "This is a list of the people who returned to Jerusalem and to other places in Judea. They had been living in Babylonia. Nebuchadnezzar had taken them there. They returned to Jerusalem and to Judah. Each one who returned went back to his own city where his ancestors had lived before the exile. **7** They came back with Zerubbabel, Joshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, and Baanah.

The number of men from the people who returned to Judah are listed next.

ULB:

6 "These are the people of the province who went up out of the captivity of those exiles whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon took into exile. They returned to Jerusalem and to Judah, each to his city. **7** They came with Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, and Baanah.

The number of the men of the people of Israel included the following.

translationNotes

These are the people of the province

"These are the descendants of this region"

went up out of

"returned from" or "came back from"

went up

This is an idiom that refers to traveling toward Jerusalem, which was on higher ground than the surrounding area. (See: Idiom)

whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon took into exile

"whom Nebuchadnezzar, ruler of Babylon, took away from their home country." The army of Babylon did this under the command of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: Metonymy)

Zerubbabel ... Jeshua ... Nehemiah ... Azariah ... Raamiah ... Nahamani ... Mordecai ... Bilshan ... Mispereth ... Bigvai ... Nehum ... Baanah

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

The number of the men

A census had been taken when the Israelites first returned to Jerusalem after the exile. The numbers represent how many men belonged to each family group. This sentence introduces the information in the following verses.

translationWords

- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity
- exile, exiles, exiled
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians
- Jerusalem
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Nehemiah

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:8-10

UDB:

8 From the descendants of Parosh, 2,172,

   9 from the descendants of Shephatiah, 372,

   10 from the descendants of Arah, 652.

ULB:

8 The descendants of Parosh, 2,172. **9** The descendants of Shephatiah, 372. **10** The descendants of Arah, 652.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is recounting the number of people who returned from exile. The people were grouped by families according to the name of their patriarchs. The number represents the number of men in each family. (See: Numbers)

Parosh … Shephatiah … Arah

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:11-14

UDB:

¹¹ From the descendants of Pahathmoab, the descendants of Jeshua and Joab, 2,818,

¹² from the descendants of Elam, 1,254,

¹³ from the descendants of Zattu, 845,

¹⁴ from the descendants of Zakkai, 760.

ULB:

¹¹ The descendants of Pahath-Moab, through the descendants of Jeshua and Joab, 2,818. ¹² The descendants of Elam, 1,254. ¹³ The descendants of Zattu, 845. ¹⁴ The descendants of Zakkai, 760.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

through the descendants of Jeshua and Joab

"that is, the descendants of Jeshua and Joab"

Pahath-Moab … Jeshua … Joab … Elam … Zattu … Zakkai

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Joab

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:15-18

UDB:

15 From the descendants of Bani, 648,

16 from the descendants of Bebai, 628,

17 from the descendants of Azgad, 2,322,

18 from the descendants of Adonikam, 667.

ULB:

15 The descendants of Binnui, 648. **16** The descendants of Bebai, 628. **17** The descendants of Azgad, 2,322. **18** The descendants of Adonikam, 667.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Binnui … Bebai … Azgad … Adonikam

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:19-22

UDB:

19 From the descendants of Bigvai, 2,067,

20 from the descendants of Adin, 655,

21 from the descendants of Ater, whose other name is Hezekiah, 98,

22 from the descendants of Hashum, 328.

ULB:

19 The descendants of Bigvai, 2,067. **20** The descendants of Adin, 655. **21** The descendants of Ater, of Hezekiah, 98. **22** The descendants of Hashum, 328.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Bigvai ... Adin ... Ater ... Hashum

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

The descendants of Ater, of Hezekiah

The writer has shortened this sentence. AT: "the descendants of Ater, who is a descendant of Hezekiah" (See: Ellipsis)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Hezekiah

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:23-26

UDB:

23 From the descendants of Bezai, 324,

24 from the descendants of Hariph, whose other name is Jorah, 112,

25 from the descendants of Gibeon, whose other name is Gibbar, ninety-five.

26 Men whose ancestors had lived in these towns also returned:

Men from Bethlehem and Netophah, 188.

ULB:

23 The descendants of Bezai, 324. **24** The descendants of Hariph, 112. **25** The descendants of Gibeon, 95. **26** The men from Bethlehem and Netophah, 188.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Bezai … Hariph … Gibeon

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Bethlehem and Netophah

These are the names of places in Judah. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites
- Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:27-30

UDB:

27 There were also men from Anathoth, 128,

28 men from Beth Azmaveth, forty-two,

29 men from Kiriath Jearim, Kephirah and Beeroth, 743,

30 men from Ramah and Geba, 621.

ULB:

27 The men from Anathoth, 128. **28** The men of Beth Azmaveth, 42. **29** The men of Kiriath Jearim, Kephirah, and Beeroth, 743. **30** The men of Ramah and Geba, 621.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Anathoth … Beth Azmaveth … Kiriath Jearim, Kephirah, and Beeroth … Ramah and Geba

These are all names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:31-34

UDB:

31 There were men from Micmash, 122,

32 men from Bethel and Ai, 123,

33 men from Nebo, fifty-two,

34 men from Elam, 1,254.

ULB:

31 The men of Michmas, 122. **32** The men of Bethel and Ai, 123. **33** The men of the other Nebo, 52. **34** The people of the other Elam, 1,254.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Michmas ... Bethel and Ai ... Nebo ... Elam

These are all names of places. (See How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Bethel
- Ai
- Elam, Elamites

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:35-38

UDB:

35 There were men from Harim, 320,

36 men from Jericho, 345,

37 men from Lod, Hadid, and Ono, 721,

38 men from Senaah, 3,930.

These priests also returned:

ULB:

35 The men of Harim, 320. **36** The men of Jericho, 345. **37** The men of Lod, Hadid, and Ono, 721. **38** The men of Senaah, 3,930.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Harim ... Jericho ... Lod, Hadid, and Ono ... Senaah

These are all names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Jericho

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:39-42

UDB:

39 The descendants of Jedaiah, who are the family of Jeshua, 973,

40 the descendants of Immer, 1,052,

41 the descendants of Pashhur, 1,247,

42 the descendants of Harim, 1,017.

ULB:

39 The priests: The descendants of Jedaiah (of the house of Jeshua), 973. **40** The descendants of Immer, 1,052. **41** The descendants of Pashhur, 1,247. **42** The descendants of Harim, 1,017.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Jedaiah ... Jeshua ... Immer ... Pashhur ... Harim

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

of the house of Jeshua

The word "house" is a metonym for family. AT: "from the family of Jeshua" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:43-45

UDB:

43 Descendants of Levi who returned were:

the descendants of Jeshua, Kadmiel, Binnui, and Hodeva, seventy-four,

44 singers who were descendants of Asaph, 148.

45 Also 138 temple gatekeepers from the descendants of Shallum, Ater, Talmon, Akkub, Hatita, and Shobai, returned.

ULB:

43 The Levites: The descendants of Jeshua, of Kadmiel, of Binnui, and of Hodevah, 74. [1] **44** The singers: The descendants of Asaph, 148. **45** The gatekeepers of the descendants of Shallum, the descendants of Ater, the descendants of Talmon, the descendants of Akkub, the descendants of Hatita, the descendants of Shobai, 138.

7:43 [1]Instead of *of Binnui, and of Hodevah* , some modern versions have *the descendants of Hodevah* .

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Jeshua … Kadmiel … Binnui … Hodevah … Asaph … Shallum … Ater … Talmon … Akkub … Hatita … Shobai

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

singers

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

gatekeepers

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:46-49

UDB:

46 Temple workers who returned were descendants of these men:

Ziha, Hasupha, Tabbaoth,

47 Keros, Sia, Padon,

48 Lebanah, Hagabah, Shalmai,

49 Hanan, Giddel, Gahar,

ULB:

46 The temple servants: The descendants of Ziha, the descendants of Hasupha, the descendants of Tabbaoth, **47** the descendants of Keros, the descendants of Sia, the descendants of Padon, **48** the descendants of Lebana, the descendants of Hagaba, the descendants of Shalmai, **49** the descendants of Hanan, the descendants of Giddel, the descendants of Gahar.

translationNotes

General Information:

These verses continue the names of people whose descendants returned from the exile.

Ziha ... Hasupha ... Tabbaoth ... Keros ... Sia ... Padon ... Lebana, ... Hagaba ... Shalmai ... Hanan ... Giddel ... Gahar

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sia

This is the same man known by the name Siaha in Ezra 2:44.

translationWords

- temple
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:50-52

UDB:

50 Reaiah, Rezin, Nekoda,

51 Gazzam, Uzza, Paseah,

52 Besai, Meunim, Ephusesim who is also called Nephushesim,

ULB:

50 The descendants of Reaiah, the descendants of Rezin, the descendants of Nekoda, **51** the descendants of Gazzam, the descendants of Uzza, the descendants of Paseah, **52** the descendants of Besai, the descendants of Meunim, the descendants of Nephushesim.

translationNotes

General Information:

These verses continue the names of people whose descendants returned from the exile.

Reaiah … Rezin … Nekoda … Gazzam … Uzza … Paseah … Besai … Meunim … Nephushesim

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:53-56

UDB:

53 Bakbuk, Hakupha, Harhur,

54 Bazluth who is also called Bazluth, Mehida, Harsha,

55 Barkos, Sisera, Temah,

56 Neziah, and Hatipha.

ULB:

53 The descendants of Bakbuk, the descendants of Hakupha, the descendants of Harhur, **54** the descendants of Bazluth, the descendants of Mehida, the descendants of Harsha, **55** the descendants of Barkos, the descendants of Sisera, the descendants of Temah, **56** the descendants of Neziah, the descendants of Hatipha.

translationNotes

General Information:

These verses continue the names of people whose descendants returned from the exile.

Bakbuk … Hakupha … Harhur … Bazluth … Mehida … Harsha … Barkos … Sisera … Temah … Neziah … Hatipha

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:57-60

UDB:

57 Descendants of the servants of King Solomon who returned were:

Sotai, Sophereth, Perida,

58 Jaalah, Darkon, Giddel,

59 the descendants of Shephatiah, the descendants of Hattil, the descendants of Pochereth Hazzebaim, the descendants of Amon.

60 Altogether, there were 392 temple workers and descendants of Solomon's servants who returned.

ULB:

57 The descendants of Solomon's servants: the descendants of Sotai, the descendants of Sophereth, the descendants of Perida, **58** the descendants of Jaala, the descendants of Darkon, the descendants of Giddel, **59** the descendants of Shephatiah, the descendants of Hattil, the descendants of Pochereth Hazzebaim, the descendants of Amon. **60** All the temple servants, and the descendants of Solomon's servants, were 392.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Sotai ... Sophereth ... Perida ... Jaala ... Darkon ... Giddel ... Shephatiah ... Hattil ... Pochereth Hazzebaim ... Amon

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sophereth

This is the name of a man who is called Hassophereth in Ezra 2:55.

Perida

This is the name of a man who is also called Peruda in Ezra 2:55.

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Solomon
- temple
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:61-63

UDB:

61-62 Another group of 642 people from the clans of Delaiah, Tobiah, and Nekoda returned from the towns of Telmelah, Telharsha, Kerub, Addon, also known as Addon, and Immer in Babylonia. But they could not prove that they were descendants of Israel.

63 Priests from the descendants of Hobaiah, Hakkoz, and Barzillai also returned. Barzillai had married a woman who is a descendant of a man named Barzillai from the region of Gilead, and he had taken his wife's family name.

ULB:

61 These were the people who went up from Tel Melah, Tel Harsha, Kerub, Addon, and Immer. But they could not prove that they or their ancestors' families were descendants from Israel: **62** the descendants of Delaiah, the descendants of Tobiah, and the descendants of Nekoda, 642. **63** Those who were from the priests: the descendants of Habaiah, Hakkoz, and Barzillai (who took his wife from the daughters of Barzillai of Gilead and was called by their name).

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

went up

This is an idiom that refers to traveling toward Jerusalem, which was on higher ground than the surrounding area. AT: "returned" or "came back" (See: Idiom)

Tel Melah ... Tel Harsha ... Kerub ... Addon ... Immer

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Delaiah ... Tobiah ... Nekoda ... Habaiah ... Hakkoz ... Barzillai

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- family, families
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Israel, Israelites

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- call, calls, calling, called
- name, names, named

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:64-65

UDB:

64 They searched in the records that contained the names of people's ancestors, but they could not find the names of those families, so they were not allowed to have the rights and duties that priests had. They did not qualify to be priests because they could not trace their family history. **65** The governor told them they should not be allowed to eat the priests' share of the food, taken from the sacrifices, and they should come who could use the marked stones to find what God said about their being priests once more.

ULB:

64 These sought their records among those enrolled by their genealogy, but they could not be found, so they were excluded from the priesthood as unclean. **65** Then the governor said to them that they should not be allowed to eat the priests' share of food from the sacrifices until there rose up a priest with Urim and Thummim.

translationNotes

These sought their records among those enrolled by their genealogy

"They sought their written genealogical records" or "They searched their written genealogical records"

These sought

"These" refers to the descendants of Hobaiah, Hakkoz and Barzillai. (See: Nehemiah 7:63)

but they could not be found

This can be expressed in active form. AT: "but they could not find their records" (See: Active or Passive)

they were excluded from the priesthood as unclean

This can be translated in active form. The abstract noun "priesthood" can be translated as the verb "work as priests." AT: "the governor treated them as if they were unclean and did not allow them to work as priests" (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

until there rose up a priest with Urim and Thummim

This can be stated in active form. AT: "until a priest with Urim and Thummim approved" (See: Active or Passive)

Urim and Thummim

These were sacred stones that the high priest carried on his breastplate and used at times to determine God's will. (See: Translate Unknowns)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:66-67

UDB:

66 Altogether, there were 42,360 people who returned to Judea. **67** There were also 7,337 of their servants, and two-hundred and forty-five singers, counting both men and women.

ULB:

66 The whole assembly together was 42,360, **67** besides their male servants and their female servants, of whom there were 7,337. They had 245 singing men and women.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

The whole assembly together

"The whole group together"

was 42,360

"was 42,360 people"

singing men and women

"male singers and female singers"

translationWords

- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:68-69

UDB:

68 The Israelites also brought back from Babylonia 736 horses, 245 mules, **69** 435 camels, and 6,720 donkeys.

ULB:

68 Their horses were 736 in number, their mules, 245, **69** their camels, 435, and their donkeys, 6,720.

translationNotes

736 … 245 … 435 … 6,720

“seven hundred and thirty-six … two hundred and forty-five … four hundred and thirty-five … six thousand seven hundred and twenty.” These are numbers of animals brought back. (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- donkey, mule
- camel, camels

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:70-72

UDB:

70 Some of the leaders of the clans gave gifts for the work of rebuilding the temple. The governor gave eight and one-half kilograms of gold, fifty bowls to be used in the temple, and five-hundred and thirty robes for the priests. **71** The other leaders gave to the treasury one-hundred and seventy kilograms of gold, and the leaders of the clans gave a total of one and one-fifth metric tons of silver. **72** The rest of the people gave one-hundred and seventy kilograms of gold, and one metric ton of silver, and sixty-seven robes for the priests.

ULB:

70 Some from among the heads of ancestors' families gave gifts for the work. The governor gave to the treasury one thousand darics of gold, 50 basins, and 530 priestly garments. [1] **71** Some of the heads of ancestors' families gave into the treasury for the work twenty thousand darics of gold and 2,200 minas of silver. **72** The rest of the people gave twenty thousand darics of gold, and two thousand minas of silver, and sixty-seven priestly garments.

7:70 [1]The Hebrew text has *thirty priestly garments* , but it is difficult to understand. Most modern versions have *530 priestly garments* . However, some recommend reading *thirty priestly garments and five hundred minas of silver* .

translationNotes

the heads of ancestors' families

"the chief patriarchs" or "the leaders of the clans"

gave to the treasury

"put into the treasury"

one thousand darics

"1,000 darics" (See: Numbers)

darics of gold

A daric was a small gold coin that people in the Persian Empire used. (See: Biblical Money)

50 basins

"fifty basins." These are large bowls. (See: Numbers)

530 priestly garments

"five hundred thirty priestly garments." These are items of clothing worn by the priests. (See: Numbers)

twenty thousand darics

"20,000 darics" (See: Numbers)

2,200 minas of silver

"two thousand two hundred minas of silver." A mina is about one half of a kilogram in weight. (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

silver

a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments

two thousand minas

"2,000 minas" (See: Numbers)

sixty-seven priestly garments

"67 priestly garments" (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- family, families
- gift, gifts
- works, deeds, work, acts
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- gold, golden
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 7:73

UDB:

73 So the priests, the Levites who helped the priests, the temple guards, the musicians, the temple workers, and many ordinary people, who were all Israelites, started to live in the towns and cities of Judea where their ancestors had lived.

By the seventh month the people of Israel had gone to their cities and they were living in them.

ULB:

73 So the priests, the Levites, the gatekeepers, the singers, some of the people, the temple servants, and all Israel lived in their cities.

By the seventh month the people of Israel were settled in their cities."

translationNotes

gatekeepers

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

singers

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

some of the people

The implied information is that this refers to some of the Israelites who were not priests or other temple workers. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

all Israel

Possible meanings are: 1) all the groups of Israelites that are listed in this verse or 2) the rest of the Israelites who did not work in the temple.

the seventh month

"month 7." This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: Ordinal Numbers and Hebrew Months)

were settled in their cities

"lived in their own cities"

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- temple
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Israel, Israelites
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 07 General Notes
- Nehemiah 7 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 08 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Reading of the Law

During the exile, the Hebrew language was no longer spoken. Only the priests and Levites still understood it. Ezra read the book of the law to the people in Hebrew and the Levites walked among the crowd translating it into Aramaic for the people to understand. (See: priest, priests, priesthood and law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Festival of Shelters

After they heard Ezra read the Law of Moses, the people obeyed it by making temporary shelters for themselves with tree branches. They did this to remember that their ancestors slept in shelters when they came out of slavery in Egypt.

Links:

- **Nehemiah 08:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 8:1-3

UDB:

1 All the people gathered together in the plaza that was close to the Water Gate. Men and women and children who were old enough to understand gathered together. They asked Ezra to bring out the scroll of the law that Moses had written down, and which Yahweh had given as the law for the people of Israel, for them to obey its rules and commands. **2** Ezra, who served God through the sacrifices in the temple, brought out the law and presented it before all the people, to both men and women, and anyone else who could understand what he read. He did this on the first day of the seventh month of that year. **3** So he brought it out and read it to the people. He read it from early in the morning until the middle of the day. All the people listened, men and women, anyone who was able to understand what he read. The people listened with great interest to what Ezra read from the book of the law.

ULB:

1 All the people gathered as one man in the open area in front of the Water Gate. They asked Ezra the scribe to bring the Book of the Law of Moses, which Yahweh had commanded Israel. **2** On the first day of the seventh month, Ezra the priest brought the law before the assembly, both men and women, and all who could hear and understand. **3** He faced the open area in front of the Water Gate, and he read from it from early morning until midday, before men and women, and any who could understand, and all the people listened attentively to the book of the law.

translationNotes

All the people gathered as one man

The word "all" is a generalization that indicates the people as a whole came together. AT: "The people gathered all together" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

Water Gate

This was the name of a large opening or doorway in the wall.

the Book of the Law of Moses

This would have been all or part of the first five books of the Old Testament.

On the first day of the seventh month

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day of the seventh month is near the middle of September on Western calendars. AT: "On day 1 of month 7" (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

brought the law

"brought The Book of the Law"

all who could hear and understand

This would include children who were old enough to understand what was being read.

He faced the open area

"He turned towards the open area"

he read from it

Here "it" refers to the Book of the Law of Moses.

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- water, waters, watered, watering
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Ezra
- scribe, scribes
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Israel, Israelites
- day, days
- priest, priests, priesthood
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 8:4-5

UDB:

4 Ezra stood on top of a high wooden platform that had been built by the people for this purpose. At his right side stood Mattithiah, Shema, Anaiah, Uriah, Hilkiah, and Maaseiah. At his left side stood Pedaiah, Mishael, Malkijah, Hashum, Hashbaddanah, Zechariah, and Meshullam.

5 Ezra opened the scroll as he stood on the platform above the people, and all could see him, and as he opened the book all the people stood up.

ULB:

4 Then Ezra the scribe stood on a high wooden platform which the people had made for the purpose. Standing beside him were Mattithiah, Shema, Anaiah, Uriah, Hilkiah, and Maaseiah, on his right side; and Pedaiah, Mishael, Malchijah, Hashum, Hashbaddanah, Zechariah, and Meshullam were standing on his left side. **5** Ezra opened the book in the sight of all the people, for he was standing above the people, and when he opened it all the people stood up.

translationNotes

Mattithiah, Shema, Anaiah, Uriah, Hilkiah, and Maaseiah … Pedaiah, Mishael, Malchijah, Hashum, Hashbaddanah, Zechariah, and Meshullam

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ezra opened the book in the sight of all the people

The abstract noun "sight" can be expressed with the verb "see." AT: "Everyone saw Ezra open the book" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the book

"The Book of the Law"

he was standing above the people

"he was standing higher than the people"

when he opened it all the people stood up

The people stood up out of respect for God's word. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Ezra
- scribe, scribes
- Zechariah (OT)

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 8:6-8

UDB:

6 Then Ezra praised Yahweh, the great God, and all the people lifted up their hands and said, "Amen! Amen!" Then they all bowed down with their faces to the ground, and they worshiped Yahweh.

7 Jeshua, Bani, Sherebiah, Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodiah, Maaseiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan, and Pelaiah, were all Levites. They explained the meaning of the laws of Moses to the people who were standing there. **8** They also read from scrolls the law that God gave to Moses, and they translated it into the Aramaic language, making the meaning clear for those who could understand it.

ULB:

6 Ezra gave thanks to Yahweh, the great God, and all the people lifted up their hands and answered, "Amen! Amen!" Then they bowed their heads and worshiped Yahweh with their faces to the ground. **7** Also Jeshua, Bani, Sherebiah, Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodiah, Maaseiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan, Pelaiah—the Levites—helped the people understand the law, while the people remained in their place. [1] **8** They read in the book, The Law of God, making it clear with interpretation and giving the meaning so the people understood the reading.

8:7 [1]Most modern versions, including the ULB and UDB, translate so as to identify as Levites all the persons named in this verse. However, some modern versions translate so as to put *the Levites* in the same list as the individuals first named.

translationNotes

Ezra gave thanks to Yahweh

The abstract noun "thanks" can be translated as a verb. AT: "Ezra thanked Yahweh" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Jeshua, Bani, Sherebiah, Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodiah, Maaseiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan, Pelaiah

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

They read in the book

The word "They" here refers to the Levites.

making it clear with interpretation and giving the meaning

The abstract nouns "interpretation" and "meaning" can be translated as verbs. AT: "clearly interpreting and explaining it" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the reading

"what was read"

translationWords

- Ezra
- Yahweh
- God
- amen, truly
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- worship
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 8:9-10

UDB:

9 Then Nehemiah the governor, and Ezra the priest and scribe, and the Levites who were interpreting what was being read to the people, said to them, "Yahweh your God considers that this day is set apart from other days. So do not be sad or cry!" For all the people were crying when they heard the law of Moses read by Ezra.

10 Then Nehemiah said to them, "Now go home and enjoy some good food and have something sweet to drink. And send some of it to people who do not have anything to eat or drink. This is a day set apart to worship our Lord. Do not be filled with sadness! The joy that Yahweh gives will make you strong."

ULB:

9 Nehemiah the governor, and Ezra the priest and scribe, and the Levites who were interpreting to the people said to all the people, "This day is holy to Yahweh your God. Do not mourn or weep." For all the people wept when they heard the words of the law. **10** Then Nehemiah said to them, "Go your way, eat the fat and have something sweet to drink, and send some of it to one who has nothing prepared, for this day is holy to our Lord. Do not be grieved, for the joy of Yahweh is your strength."

translationNotes

For all the people wept

This is a generalization that indicates there was great weeping among the people. AT: "For the people wept greatly" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

eat the fat and have something sweet to drink

The implied information is that the people were told to feast on rich food and sweet drinks. AT: "eat rich food and drink something sweet" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Do not be grieved

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Do not grieve" (See: Active or Passive)

for the joy of Yahweh is your strength

The abstract nouns "joy" and "strength" can be expressed as verbs or adjectives. AT: "rejoicing in Yahweh will protect you" or "being joyful in Yahweh will be your strong refuge" (See: Abstract Nouns)

translationWords

- Nehemiah
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- Ezra
- priest, priests, priesthood
- scribe, scribes
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- God
- mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully
- word, words
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 8:11-12

UDB:

11 The Levites also caused the people to be quiet, saying "Hush, do not cry, for this is a day set apart for Yahweh. Do not be sad!"

12 So the people went away, and they ate and drank, and they sent portions of food to those who did not have any. They were very happy, because they understood the meaning of the words that been read to them.

ULB:

11 So the Levites made the people be quiet, saying, "Hush! for this day is holy. Do not be grieved."
12 Then all the people went their way to eat and to drink and to share food and to celebrate with great joy because they had understood the words that were made known to them.

translationNotes

Hush!

"Be quiet!" or "Be silent!"

Do not be grieved

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Do not grieve" (See: Active or Passive)

celebrate with great joy

The abstract noun "joy" can be expressed as a verb. AT: "rejoice greatly" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the words that were made known to them

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the words that he declared to them" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- word, words
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 8:13-15

UDB:

13 On the next day, the leaders of the families and the priests and the Levites came together with Ezra to study so they would gain insight from the words of the law. **14** They read in the law how Yahweh had ordered Moses to command the people of Israel to live in temporary shelters that entire month, to remember that their ancestors lived in shelters when they walked in the wilderness. **15** They also learned that they should proclaim in Jerusalem and in all the towns that the people should go to the hills and cut branches from olive trees and from wild olive trees and from myrtle trees, palm trees and shade trees. They should make shelters from these branches to live in during the festival, just as Moses wrote about this.

ULB:

13 On the second day the leaders of the ancestors' families from all the people, the priests and the Levites, came together to Ezra the scribe to gain insight from the words of the law. **14** They found written in the law how Yahweh had commanded through Moses that the people of Israel should live in shelters during the festival of the seventh month. **15** They should make a proclamation in all their cities, and in Jerusalem, saying, "Go out into the hill country, and bring back branches from olive and wild olive trees, and from myrtle, palms and shade trees, to make shelters, as it is written."

translationNotes

On the second day

"On day 2" or "On the next day" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

to gain insight from

The abstract noun "insight" can be expressed as a verb. AT: "to understand" (See: Abstract Nouns)

should live in shelters

These were temporary shelters that people made out of branches and leaves.

the seventh month

"month 7." This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: Ordinal Numbers and Hebrew Months)

They should make a proclamation

"They should announce"

myrtle

a kind of small tree with colorful flowers (See: Translate Unknowns)

shade trees

"leafy trees"

as it is written

This can be translated in active form. AT: "as Moses wrote about it" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- day, days
- family, families
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Ezra
- scribe, scribes
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- written
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Moses
- Israel, Israelites
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering
- festival, festivals
- proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations
- Jerusalem
- olive, olives
- palm, palms

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 8:16-17

UDB:

16 So the people went out of the city and cut branches and used them to build shelters. They built shelters on the flat roofs of their houses, in their courtyards, in the courtyards of the temple, and in the plazas close to the Water Gate and the Ephraim Gate. **17** All of the Israelite people who had returned from Babylon built shelters and lived in them for one week. The Israelite people had not celebrated that festival like that since the time that Joshua lived. And the people had very great joy.

ULB:

16 So the people went out and brought the branches back and made themselves shelters, each on their own roofs, in their courtyards, in the courts of the house of God, in the open area in front of the Water Gate, and in the square at the Gate of Ephraim. **17** All the assembly of those who had returned from captivity made shelters and lived in them. For since the days of Joshua son of Nun to that day, the people of Israel had not celebrated this festival, and so their joy was very great.

translationNotes

made themselves shelters

"each built their own shelters"

Water Gate … Gate of Ephraim

These are names of large openings or doorways in the wall.

in the square at the Gate of Ephraim

"in the open place by the Gate of Ephraim"

For since the days of Joshua

"From the days of Joshua"

son of Nun

"Nun" here is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

their joy was very great

The abstract noun "joy" can be expressed as an adjective. AT: "the people were very joyful" (See: Abstract Nouns)

translationWords

- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- God
- water, waters, watered, watering
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Joshua
- Israel, Israelites
- festival, festivals
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 8:18

UDB:

18 Every day during that week Ezra read to the people from the book of the law of God. Then on the eighth day, they followed the decree and called for all the people to come together, so they could bring the festival to an end.

ULB:

18 Also day by day, from the first day to the last, Ezra read from the book of the law of God. They kept the festival for seven days and on the eighth day was a solemn assembly, in obedience to the decree.

translationNotes

day by day

This idiom means "each day." (See: Idiom)

from the first day to the last

The implied information is that it was during the entire week of the festival. AT: "from the first day to the last day of the week" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

They kept the festival

"They made a feast" or "They celebrated the festival"

on the eighth day

"on day 8" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

solemn assembly

This was a special religious gathering.

in obedience to the decree

The implied information is that "the decree" was the command of Yahweh about how the Festival of Shelters was to end. AT: "as God had commanded" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Ezra
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- festival, festivals
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- decree, decrees, decreed

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 09 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter and the next one form a single section.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prayer to God

The people prayed and thanked God for his care for them and the blessings he gave to them. They also confessed their sin of disobeying him. (See: bless, blessed, blessing, confess, confessed, confesses, confession and sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Learning from their ancestor's mistakes

This chapter teaches that the Jews learned from the mistakes of their ancestors. They became determined to worship Yahweh alone, to not intermarry with other peoples, and to worship Yahweh as the law of Moses instructed them. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Recalling the great power of God

It was common to recall the great things God did for Israel. This is a reminder to Israel of God's power. It is intended to bring the people to repentance and proper worship of Yahweh. (See: repent, repents, repented, repentance)

Links:

- **Nehemiah 09:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 9:1-2

UDB:

1 On the twenty-fourth day of the same month, the people gathered together. They did not eat food for a while, and they wore clothes they made from bags used to carry wheat and other grains, and they put the dust of the earth on their heads. **2** The descendants of Israel separated themselvses away from all the foreigners. They stood there and confessed their own sins and the wicked things their ancestors had done.

ULB:

1 Now on the twenty-fourth day of the same month the people of Israel were assembled and they were fasting, and they were wearing sackcloth, and they put dust on their heads. **2** The descendants of Israel separated themselves from all the foreigners. They stood and confessed their own sins and the evil actions of their ancestors.

translationNotes

the twenty-fourth day of the same month

"the twenty-fourth day of the seventh month" This is near the middle of October on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

the people of Israel were assembled

"the people of Israel came together"

they were wearing sackcloth, and they put dust on their heads

This was in order to show how sorry they were for the wrong things they and their ancestors had done. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The descendants of Israel

"The Israelites"

separated themselves from all the foreigners

"no longer had anything to do with those who were not Israelites"

They stood and confessed their own sins and the evil actions of their ancestors

"They admitted the wrong things that they had done and also the wrong things their forefathers had done"

translationWords

- day, days
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- fast, fasts, fasted, fasting, fastings
- sackcloth
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- confess, confessed, confesses, confession
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:3-4

UDB:

3 They stood and for three hours they read from the law of Yahweh, and for another three hours they spoke out loud about their sins before Yahweh, and they bowed down and worshiped him. **4** There were Levites standing on the stairs. They were Jeshua, Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, another Bani, and Kenani.

ULB:

3 They stood up in their places, and for one-fourth of the day they read from the book of the law of Yahweh their God. For another fourth of the day they were confessing and bowing down before Yahweh their God. **4** The Levites, Jeshua, Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, and Kenani, stood on the stairs and they called out with a loud voice to Yahweh their God.

translationNotes

They stood up

All the Israelites stood up

they were confessing

"they were admitting the wrong things they had done"

bowing down before

"worshiping" or "praising"

The Levites, Jeshua, Bani … stood on the stairs

Some versions translate, "Jeshua, Bani … stood on the stairs built for the Levites"

Jeshua, Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, and Kenani

men's names (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- God
- confess, confessed, confesses, confession

- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- call, calls, calling, called
- voice, voices

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:5-6

UDB:

[5] Then the leaders of the Levites called out to the people. They were Jeshua, Bani, Hashabneiah, Sherebiah, Hodiah, Shebaniah, and Pethahiah. They said, "Stand there and give praise to Yahweh your God, who has always lived and will live forever! Yahweh, we praise your glorious name! Your name is more important than everything else that is good and wonderful! [6] You are Yahweh, and no one else. You made the sky and the heavens above everything, and all the angels who do God's will. You made the earth and everything that is on it, and you made the seas and everything that is in them. You give life to everything. All the angel armies in heaven worship you.

ULB:

[5] Then the Levites, Jeshua, and Kadmiel, Bani, Hashabneiah, Sherebiah, Hodiah, Shebaniah, and Pethahiah said, "Stand up and give praise to Yahweh your God forever and ever."

"May they bless your glorious name, and may it be exalted above every blessing and praise. [6] You are Yahweh. You alone. You have made heaven, the highest heavens, with all their host, and the earth and everything on it, and the seas and all that is in them. You give life to them all, and the host of heaven worship you.

translationNotes

Then the Levites … said, "Stand up … ever."

Here the Levites are speaking to the people of Israel.

give praise to Yahweh

"bless Yahweh"

Jeshua … Kadmiel … Bani … Sherebiah … Shebaniah

men's names. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 9:3-4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hashabneiah … Hodiah … Pethahiah

men's names (See: How to Translate Names)

May they bless your glorious name

the Levites are speaking to Yahweh. "May the people of Judah bless your glorious name, Yahweh"

the highest heavens, with all their host … the host of heaven worship you

A host is an army. The "host of heaven" speaks in a metaphor of the many stars as if they were an army. The stars in turn are a metaphor for the many angels. The stars worshiping Yahweh is a metaphor for the angels worshiping Yahweh. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy
- Yahweh
- God
- bless, blessed, blessing
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- name, names, named
- exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- angel, angels, archangel
- earth, earthen, earthly
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- worship

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Yahweh, you are God. You chose Abram and brought him out of Ur in the Chaldees. You gave him the name Abraham. ⁸ You saw deep inside of him, and you knew he was a trustworthy person. Then you made a promise to him pledged with blood, promising that you would give to his descendants the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, and the Girgashites. And you, Yahweh, have done what you promised, because you always do what is right.

ULB:

⁷ You are Yahweh, the God who chose Abram, and brought him out of Ur of the Chaldees, and gave him the name Abraham. ⁸ You found his heart was faithful before you, and you made with him the covenant to give to his descendants the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, and the Girgashites. You have kept your promise because you are righteous.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The Levites continue their prayer before all the people.

Ur of the Chaldees

"Ur, where the Chaldean people group lived"

You found his heart was faithful before you

The heart, the inner being of the person, represents the person. AT: "You saw that he was completely faithful to you" (See: Synecdoche)

Canaanites ... Hittites ... Amorites ... Perizzites ... Jebusites ... Girgashites

people group names (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Yahweh
- God
- Abraham, Abram

- Ur
- Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans
- name, names, named
- heart, hearts
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- Hittite, Hittites
- Amorite, Amorites
- Perizzite
- Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites
- promise, promises, promised
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:9-10

UDB:

9 You saw how much our ancestors were suffering in Egypt. You heard them cry to you for help when they were beside the Sea of Reeds. **10** You performed many kinds of miracles that caused the king, his servants, and all his people to suffer. As a result, you, Yahweh, made a great name for yourself, and it is still known to be great even today!

ULB:

9 You saw the affliction of our forefathers in Egypt and you heard their cry by the Sea of Reeds. **10** You gave signs and wonders against Pharaoh, and all his servants, and on all the people of his land, for you knew that the Egyptians acted with arrogance against them. But you made a name for yourself which stands to this day.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

You saw

Yahweh saw

you heard their cry

The implied information is that God was moved to action because of the Israelites' cries for help. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

signs and wonders against Pharaoh

The plagues tested Pharaoh's heart, and they became a witness against his hardness of heart. AT: "signs and wonders that testified against Pharaoh" or "signs and wonders that condemned Pharaoh" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

all the people of his land

"all the Egyptians"

acted with arrogance against them

"were arrogant toward the Israelites" or "mistreated God's chosen people"

you made a name for yourself which stands to this day

Here "name" represents a reputation. AT: "you made yourself famous and even now people still remember" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- name, names, named

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:11

UDB:

11 You divided the sea into two parts, and your people walked through the middle of it on dry land. You drowned the soldiers of the Egyptian army under the waters, and they sank as a stone sinks in the deep!

ULB:

11 Then you divided the sea before them, so that they went through the middle of the sea on the dry land; and threw those who pursued them into the depths, as a stone into deep waters.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

you divided the sea

God divided

you … threw those who pursued them into the depths, as a stone into deep waters

In this simile, the writer describes God throwing the Egyptians into the sea as easily as a person would throw a stone into water, and the stone would disappear under the water completely. (See: Simile)

translationWords

- stone, stones, stoning
- water, waters, watered, watering

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:12-13

UDB:

12 During the day you led them with a cloud like a pillar for them to follow, and at night you gave them the light of a pillar of fire, to show them where to walk.

13 On Mount Sinai you came down from heaven and spoke to them. You gave them many regulations and decrees that are just and reliable, and you gave them commands and laws that are good.

ULB:

12 You led them by a pillar of cloud during by day, and by a pillar of fire during the night to light the way for them to go. **13** On Mount Sinai you came down and you spoke with them from heaven and gave to them righteous decrees and true laws, good statutes and commandments.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

You led them

Yahweh led the Israelites.

you came down

When God talks with his people, he is often described as "coming down" or "coming down from heaven." This is a descriptive way of saying that God appeared to that person. AT: "you appeared" or "you came down from heaven" (See: Idiom and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

righteous decrees and true laws, good statutes and commandments

Both of these double phrases describe the same thing, the law of Moses. (See: Parallelism)

translationWords

- column, columns, pillar, pillars
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- decree, decrees, decreed
- true, truth, truths
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- good, goodness
- statute, statutes
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ You taught them about your holy Sabbath, and you gave them commands, and rules, and a list of laws to obey from your servant Moses. He would tell them to the people. ¹⁵ When they were hungry, you gave them bread from heaven. When they were thirsty, you gave them water from a rock. You said to them to go and take the land you promised with a vow to give them.

ULB:

¹⁴ You made your holy Sabbath known to them, and you gave them commandments and statutes and a law through Moses your servant. ¹⁵ You gave them bread from heaven for their hunger, and water from a rock for their thirst, and you said to them to go in to possess the land you swore on oath to give them.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

commandments ... statutes ... law

Each of these three words refers to the law of Moses. (See: Doublet)

translationWords

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Sabbath
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- statute, statutes
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- bread
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- water, waters, watered, watering
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:16-17

UDB:

16 But our ancestors were very proud and stubborn. They refused even to listen to what you commanded them to do. **17** They refused to listen to you. They forgot about all the miracles that you had performed for them. They became stubborn, and because they rebelled against you, they appointed a leader to take them back to Egypt, where they would be slaves again! But you are a God who forgives again and again. You are slow to be angry, and your love for them is never-ending and it is great. You did not abandon them.

ULB:

16 But they and our ancestors acted disrespectfully, and they were stubborn, and did not listen to your commandments. **17** They refused to listen, and they did not think about the wonders that you had done among them, but became stubborn, and in their rebellion they appointed a leader to return to their slavery. But you are a God who is full of forgiveness, gracious and compassionate, slow to anger, and abounding in steadfast love. You did not abandon them.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

they and our ancestors

the Israelites at the time of Moses and the people of Israel after the time of Moses

they were stubborn … became stubborn

The literal statement is "they hardened their necks." If your language has a different idiom for being stubborn, you may want to use it here. (See: Idiom)

the wonders that you had done among them

"the miracles that you had done among them"

they appointed a leader to return to their slavery

The Israelites would know that this referred to their ancestors wanting to return to Egypt. AT: "they appointed a leader to take them back to Egypt where they had been slaves" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

who is full of forgiveness

The desire to forgive is spoken of as if it were a liquid that could fill a container. AT: "who is ready to forgive" (See: Metaphor)

abounding in steadfast love

Love is spoken of as if it were a food crop that Yahweh could share with people. AT: "loves his people very much" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- God
- forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- grace, gracious
- compassion, compassionate
- anger, angered, angry
- love, loves, loving, loved

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:18-19

UDB:

18 So, you did not desert them, even though they melted precious metals and cast an idol that looked like a calf. They presented this calf to the people and said, 'This is your god, who brought you up out of Egypt,' while they cursed God and did what he had forbidden.

19 You always acted mercifully, and you would not abandon them when they were in the desert. The bright cloud which was like a huge pillar continued to lead them during the daytime, and the fiery cloud showed them where to walk at night.

ULB:

18 Even when they had cast a calf out of molten metal and said, 'This is your God who brought you up out of Egypt,' and had committed great blasphemies, **19** you, in your compassion, did not abandon them in the wilderness. The pillar of cloud to lead them on the way did not leave them during day, neither did the pillar of fire by night to light the way for them to go.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

you ... did not abandon them

Yahweh did not abandon the Israelites.

cast a calf out of molten metal

melted metal and molded it in the shape of a calf

The pillar of cloud ... the pillar of fire

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 09:12.

translationWords

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies
- compassion, compassionate
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:20-21

UDB:

20 You sent your good Spirit to instruct them. You did not withhold the manna from them when they were hungry and you provided water when they were thirsty. **21** For forty years you took care of them in the desert. During all that time, they did not have need of anything. Their clothes did not wear out, and their feet did not swell up.

ULB:

20 Your good Spirit you gave them to instruct them, and your manna you did not withhold from their mouths, and water you gave them for their thirst. **21** For forty years you provided for them in the wilderness, and they lacked nothing. Their clothes did not wear out and their feet did not swell.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

Your good Spirit ... your manna ... water

The writer changes the usual word order to emphasize the good things Yahweh gave his people. Your language may have another way of emphasizing these items.

instruct

"teach"

your manna you did not withhold from their mouths

This litotes can be expressed positively. AT: "you generously gave them manna" (See: Litotes)

from their mouths

The mouth is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: "from them" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- good, goodness
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

- manna
- water, waters, watered, watering
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:22

UDB:

²² You gave them kingdoms and nations of people. They took possession of even the most distant places in this land. They occupied the land over which King Sihon ruled from Heshbon and the land over which King Og ruled in the Bashan.

ULB:

²² You gave them kingdoms and peoples, assigning to them every corner of the land. Then they took possession of the land of Sihon king of Heshbon and the land of Og king of Bashan.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

You gave them kingdoms

Yahweh gave the Israelites kingdoms.

gave them kingdoms and peoples

"enabled them to conquer kingdoms and peoples"

assigning to them every corner of the land

"enabling them to possess every part of the land"

Sihon ... Og

These are the names of kings. (See: How to Translate Names)

Heshbon ... Bashan

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- kingdom, kingdoms
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Bashan

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:23-24

UDB:

23 You caused our ancestors' children to become as numerous as the stars in the heavens, and you brought them into this land, the land you told their fathers to enter and take for themselves so they might live there. **24** They went in and took the land from the people who lived there. You enabled the Israelites to control the Canaanites and their kings so they could do to those people whatever they needed to do.

ULB:

23 You made their children as numerous as the stars of heaven, and you brought them into the land that you told their ancestors to go in and possess. **24** So the people went in and possessed the land and you subdued before them the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites. You gave them into their hands, with their kings and the peoples of the land, that Israel might do with them as they pleased.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

You made their children

Yahweh made the descendants of the Israelites at the time of Moses

gave them into their hands

The Canaanites are spoken of as if they were small objects that a person could place in the hand of another person. To give something into a person's hand is to give that person complete control over that thing. AT: "enabled the Israelites to have complete control over them" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- children, child
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:25

UDB:

25 Our ancestors' children captured cities that had walls around them for protection. They took possession of fertile land. They occupied houses that were full of good things and wells that were already dug. They took possession of vineyards, groves of olive trees, and fruit trees. They ate all that they wanted to, and they were satisfied, and they grew fat, and they were delighted because you were so good to them.

ULB:

25 They captured the fortified cities and a productive land, and they captured houses full of all good things, cisterns already cut out, vineyards and olive orchards, and fruit trees in abundance. So they ate and were satisfied and grew fat and enjoyed themselves in your great goodness.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

They captured

The Israelites at the time of Moses captured

a productive land

"a fertile land"

cisterns

holes in the ground where people store water

grew fat

This might be a metaphor for "stopped thinking about Yahweh" or "became complacent." (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- good, goodness
- vineyard, vineyards
- olive, olives
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:26-27

UDB:

26 But they disobeyed you and rebelled against you. They turned their backs on your law. They killed the prophets who warned them that they should return to you. They said and did very evil things against you. **27** So you handed them over to their enemies to defeat them. But when their enemies caused them to suffer, they called out to you. You heard their cry from heaven, and because you are very merciful, you sent them people to help them, and those leaders rescued them from their enemies.

ULB:

26 Then they became disobedient and they rebelled against you. They threw your law behind their backs. They murdered your prophets who had warned them to turn back to you, and they committed great blasphemies. **27** So you gave them into the hand of their enemies, who made them suffer. In the time of their suffering, they cried out to you, and you heard them from heaven, and because of your great mercies you sent them rescuers who rescued them out of the hand of their enemies.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

They threw your law behind their backs

The law is spoken of as if it were a worthless item that a person could throw away. AT: "They considered your law worthless and paid no attention to it" (See: Metaphor)

They threw your law

The Israelites threw Yahweh's law.

you gave them into the hand of their enemies, who made them suffer

Here "hand" represents power or control. AT: "you allowed their enemies to defeat them and cause them to suffer" (See: Metonymy)

you sent them rescuers who rescued them out of the hand of their enemies

Here "hand" represents power or control. AT: "you sent people to stop their enemies from harming them" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- mercy, merciful

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:28-29

UDB:

28 But after there was a time of peace again, our ancestors again did evil things that you hated. So you allowed their enemies to conquer them and ruled over them. But whenever they cried out to you again to help them, you heard them from heaven, and because you act mercifully you rescued them.

29 You warned them that they should again obey your laws, but they became proud and stubborn, and they disobeyed your decrees—and it is by obeying them that a person lives. They purposely ignored what you commanded them to do and became stubborn and refused to obey.

ULB:

28 But after they had rest, they did evil again before you, and you abandoned them to the hand of their enemies, so their enemies ruled over them. Yet when they returned and cried out to you, you heard from heaven, and many times because of your compassion you rescued them. **29** You warned them so they might turn back to your law. Yet they acted arrogantly and did not listen to your commands. They sinned against your decrees which give life to anyone who obeys them. They gave the stubborn shoulder-blade and stiffened their neck and refused to listen.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

they had rest, they did evil again before you

Here "they" refers to the Israelites and "you" to Yahweh.

you abandoned them to the hand of their enemies

Here "hand" represents power or control. AT: "you abandoned them and allow their enemies to defeat them" (See: Metonymy)

did not listen to your commands

If your language has a word for "listen" that also means "obey," use it here.

your decrees which give life to anyone who obeys them

Yahweh himself is spoken of as if he were the decrees themselves. AT: "you even though you give life to everyone who obeys your decrees" (See: Metonymy)

They gave the stubborn shoulder-blade and stiffened their neck

These are images of an ox refusing to allow its owner to put a yoke on its shoulders. Here they are a metaphor that represents the people being stubborn. AT: "They became stubborn" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- compassion, compassionate
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- decree, decrees, decreed
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:30-31

UDB:

30 You were patient with them for many years. You warned them by the messages your Spirit gave to the prophets. But they did not listen to those messages. So again you allowed the armies of the nations nearby to defeat them. **31** But because you act mercifully, you did not destroy them completely or abandon them. You are a gracious and merciful God!

ULB:

30 For many years you put up with them and warned them by your Spirit through your prophets. Yet they did not listen. So you gave them into the hand of the neighboring peoples. **31** But in your great mercies you did not make a complete end of them, or forsake them, for you are a gracious and merciful God.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

you gave them into the hand of the neighboring peoples

Here "hand" represents power or control. See how you translated these words in Nehemiah 9:27. AT: "you allowed the neighboring peoples to defeat them" (See: Metonymy)

you gave

Yahweh gave

you did not make a complete end of them

"you did not destroy them"

translationWords

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- mercy, merciful
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook

- grace, gracious
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:32-34

UDB:

32 Our God, you are great! You are mighty! You are awesome! You faithfully love us as you promised in your covenant with us that you fulfill! But now we are having great difficulties in all these things. Do not let our hardships become unimportant to you! They have come on our kings, on our princes, and on our priests, and on our prophets, and on our ancestors, and on all your people, from the days of the kings of Assyria until today. **33** We know that you acted justly each time you punished us. You have treated us faithfully, but we have done evil things. **34** Our kings and the leaders they appointed and our priests and our other ancestors did not obey your laws. They did not heed your commands or the warnings that you gave them.

ULB:

32 Now therefore, our God—you great, mighty, and awesome God who keep your covenant and steadfast love—do not let all this hardship seem little to you that has come on us, on our kings, on our princes, and on our priests, and on our prophets, and on our ancestors, and on all your people from the days of the kings of Assyria until today. **33** You are just in everything that has come on us, for you have dealt faithfully, but we have acted wickedly. **34** Our kings, our princes, our priests, and our ancestors have not kept your law, nor paid attention to your commandments or your covenant decrees by which you warned them.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

do not let all this hardship seem little to you that has come on us … until today

It is possible to divide this into two sentences. "Do not let all this hardship seem little to you. The hardship has come upon us … until today"

hardship … has come on us … everything that has come on us

The phrase "come on us" speaks of bad things that happen as if they are people who cause harm. AT: "harm … we have suffered … everything we have suffered" (See: Personification)

translationWords

- God
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily

- awe, awesome
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- love, loves, loving, loved
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- prince, princes, princess, princesses
- priest, priests, priesthood
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire
- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:35

UDB:

35 Even when they had their own kings, and they enjoyed the good things that you did for them in this large and fertile land that you gave to them, they did not serve you and they would not stop doing what was evil.

ULB:

35 Even in their own kingdom, while they enjoyed your great goodness to them, in the large and productive land you set before them, they did not serve you or turn away from their evil ways.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

while they enjoyed your great goodness to them

"while they enjoyed the good things you gave them"

they did not serve you

"they were not obedient to your law or teaching"

translationWords

- kingdom, kingdoms
- good, goodness
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:36-37

UDB:

36 So now we are slaves here in this land that you gave to our ancestors, the land that you gave to them in order that they could enjoy all the good things that grow here. But we became slaves here! **37** Because we have sinned, we cannot eat the things that grow here. The kings who now rule over us are enjoying the things that grow here. They rule us and take our cattle. We must serve them and do the things that please them. We are in great misery.

ULB:

36 Now we are slaves in the land you gave our ancestors to enjoy its fruit and its good gifts, and behold, we are slaves in it! **37** The rich yield from our land goes to the kings you have set over us because of our sins. They rule over our bodies and over our livestock as they please. We are in great distress.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

its good gifts

"all the good things in it" or "all the good things we can get from it"

The rich yield from our land goes to the kings

"We pay tribute to kings for working our own land"

They rule

The kings rule.

translationWords

- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- good, goodness
- gift, gifts
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- livestock

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 9:38

UDB:

38 Because of all this, we, the people of Israel are making a solemn agreement on a scroll. We will write on it the names of our leaders, the names of the Levites, and the names of the priests, and then we will seal it."

ULB:

38 Because of all this, we make a firm covenant in writing. On the sealed document are the names of our princes, Levites, and priests."

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

Because of all this

because the people had disobeyed and Yahweh had punished them

On the sealed document are the names

The reader should understand that the men wrote their names on the document before it was sealed.

translationWords

- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed
- name, names, named
- prince, princes, princess, princesses
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter concludes the passage beginning in chapter 9.

Special concepts in this chapter

The vow

By signing this document, the people vowed or agreed to obey God, not to buy things on the Sabbath and to pay their temple tax. (See: vow, vows, vowed, Sabbath and temple)

Links:

- **Nehemiah 10:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 10:1-3

UDB:

1 This is a list of those who signed the agreement:

I, Nehemiah son of Hakaliah, the governor and also Zedekiah.

2 The priests who signed it were:

Seraiah, Azariah, Jeremiah,

3 Pashhur, Amariah, Malchijah,

ULB:

1 On the sealed documents were Nehemiah, the governor, son of Hakaliah and Zedekiah, **2** Seraiah, Azariah, Jeremiah, **3** Pashhur, Amariah, Malchijah,

translationNotes

On the sealed documents were Nehemiah ... Malchijah

The names of these people were written on the documents. This can be stated clearly. AT: "On the sealed documents were the names of Nehemiah ... Malchijah" or "On the sealed documents were the names of the following people: Nehemiah ... Malchijah" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

sealed documents

The documents were sealed after the names had been signed on the documents.

Nehemiah

Some people believe that Nehemiah wrote this book and is speaking of himself as if he were someone else because this is an official list. (See: Pronouns)

Hakaliah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 1:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zedekiah, Seraiah ... Jeremiah, Pashhur, Amariah

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Azariah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:23. (See: How to Translate Names)

Malchijah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- name, names, named
- seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed
- Nehemiah
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- Zedekiah

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:4-8

UDB:

4 Hattush, Shebaniah, Malluk,

5 Harim, Meremoth, Obadiah,

6 Daniel, Ginnethon, Baruch,

7 Meshullam, Abijah, Mijamin,

8 Maaziah, Bilgai, and Shemaiah.

ULB:

4 Hattush, Shebaniah, Malluk, **5** Harim, Meremoth, Obadiah, **6** Daniel, Ginnethon, Baruch, **7** Meshullam, Abijah, Mijamin, **8** Maaziah, Bilgai, and Shemaiah. These were the priests.

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, Nehemiah lists the names of the priests who signed the sealed document. (See: Nehemiah 10:1)

Hattush

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shebaniah ... Meshullam

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 9:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Malluk ... Obadiah, Daniel, Ginnethon ... Abijah, Mijamin, Maaziah, Bilgai

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Harim

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meremoth

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Baruch

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:20. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shemaiah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:29. (See: How to Translate Names)

These were the priests

This refers to the previous list of men who signed the document. AT: "These were the names of the priests who signed the document" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Obadiah
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:9-14

UDB:

9 The descendants of Levi who signed it were:

Jeshua son of Azaniah, Binnui from the clan of Henadad, Kadmiel,

10 Shebaniah, Hodiah, Kelita, Pelaiah, Hanan,

11 Mika, Rehob, Hashabiah,

12 Zaccur, Sherebiah, Shebaniah,

13 Hodiah, Bani, and Beninu.

14 The Israelite leaders who signed it were:

Parosh, Pahath-Moab, Elam, Zattu, and Bani.

ULB:

9 The Levites were: Jeshua son of Azaniah, Binnui of the family of Henadad, Kadmiel, **10** and their fellow Levites, Shebaniah, Hodiah, Kelita, Pelaiah, Hanan, **11** Mika, Rehob, Hashabiah, **12** Zaccur, Sherebiah, Shebaniah, **13** Hodiah, Bani, and Beninu. **14** The leaders of the people were: Parosh, Pahath-Moab, Elam, Zattu, Bani,

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the names of the people who signed the sealed document.

The Levites were

This refers to those who put their names on the sealed documents. AT: "The Levites who put their names on the sealed documents were" (See: Ellipsis)

Jeshua ... Henadad

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:18-19. (See: How to Translate Names)

Azaniah ... Rehob ... Beninu

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Binnui

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:24. (See: How to Translate Names)

Kadmiel

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:43. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shebaniah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 9:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hodiah ... Kelita ... Pelaiah ... Sherebiah

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 8:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hanan

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:49. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mika

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 10:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hashabiah ... Bani

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:17. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zaccur

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

The leaders of the people were

This refers to those who put their names on the sealed documents. AT: "The leaders of the people who put their names on the sealed documents were" (See: Ellipsis)

Parosh

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:25. (See: How to Translate Names)

Pahath-Moab

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Elam ... Zattu

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:12. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:15-21

UDB:

¹⁵ Bunni, Azgad, Bebai,

¹⁶ Adonijah, Bigvai, Adin,

¹⁷ Ater, Hezekiah, Azzur,

¹⁸ Hodiah, Hashum, Bezai,

¹⁹ Hariph, Anathoth, Nebai,

²⁰ Magpiash, Meshullam, Hezir,

²¹ Meshezabel, Zadok, and Jaddua.

ULB:

¹⁵ Bunni, Azgad, Bebai, ¹⁶ Adonijah, Bigvai, Adin, ¹⁷ Ater, Hezekiah, Azzur, ¹⁸ Hodiah, Hashum, Bezai, ¹⁹ Hariph, Anathoth, Nebai, ²⁰ Magpiash, Meshullam, Hezir, ²¹ Meshezabel, Zadok, Jaddua,

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the names of the people who signed the sealed document.

Bunni

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 9:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Azgad, Bebai

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:16-17. (See: How to Translate Names)

Adonijah … Azzur … Nebai, Magpiash … Hezir … Jaddua

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Bigvai

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

Adin, Ater, Hezekiah … Hashum

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:20. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hodiah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 8:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

Bezai, Hariph

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:23. (See: How to Translate Names)

Anathoth

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meshullam … Meshezabel, Zadok

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Zadok

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:22-27

UDB:

[22] Pelatiah, Hanan, Anaiah,

[23] Hoshea, Hananiah, Hasshub,

[24] Hallohesh, Pilha, Shobek,

[25] Rehum, Hashabnah, Maaseiah,

[26] Ahiah, Hanan, Anan,

[27] Malluk, Harim, and Baanah.

ULB:

[22] Pelatiah, Hanan, Anaiah, [23] Hoshea, Hananiah, Hasshub, [24] Hallohesh, Pilha, Shobek, [25] Rehum, Hashabnah, Maaseiah, [26] Ahiah, Hanan, Anan, [27] Malluk, Harim, and Baanah.

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the names of the people who signed the sealed document.

Pelatiah … Hoshea … Pilha … Shobek … Hashabnah … Ahiah … Anan … Harim … Baanah

These are the name of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hanan

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:49. (See: How to Translate Names)

Anaiah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 8:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Anaiah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:8. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hasshub … Hallohesh

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Rehum

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:17. (See: How to Translate Names)

Maaseiah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:23. (See: How to Translate Names)

Malluk, Harim

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 10:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Baanah

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:6. (See: How to Translate Names)

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:28-29

UDB:

28 The rest of the people made a solemn agreement, including the priests, gatekeepers, singers, and temple workers. They also included all the men from other neighboring peoples who had left their people and were living in Israel. These men, along with their wives, their sons and daughters who were old enough to understand what they were doing, promised they would obey God's law. **29** They all joined with their leaders in making this solemn agreement. They agreed to obey all the laws that God had given to Moses. They agreed to follow and to obey everything that Yahweh our God had commanded, and all his decrees and instructions. They promised to do the following.

ULB:

28 As for the rest of the people, who were priests, Levites, gatekeepers, singers, temple servants, and all who had separated themselves from the people of the neighboring lands and pledged themselves to the law of God, including their wives, their sons and their daughters, all who have knowledge and understanding, **29** they joined together with their brothers, their nobles, and bound themselves with both a curse and an oath to walk in God's law, which was given by Moses the servant of God, and to observe and obey all the commandments of Yahweh our Lord and his decrees and his statutes.

translationNotes

gatekeepers

This refers to the people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

singers

"temple singers"

all who have knowledge and understanding

This phrase can be made explicit. AT: "all who were old enough to understand what promising to obey God meant" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

their brothers, their nobles

"their fellow brothers the nobles" or "their brothers the leaders." These phrases refer to the same people.

bound themselves with both a curse and an oath

This speaks of the people taking an oath and a curse as if the oath and the curse were a rope that physically bound them. AT: "swore themselves to an oath and a curse" or "they took an oath and called for a curse to come on themselves if they failed to keep it" (See: Metaphor)

to walk in God's law

This is an idiom. AT: "to live by God's law" or "to obey God's law" (See: Idiom)

which was given by Moses the servant of God

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which Moses the servant of God had given to Israel" (See: Active or Passive)

to observe

"to follow"

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- temple
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- pledge, pledged, pledges
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- son, sons
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- brother, brothers
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- Moses
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- decree, decrees, decreed
- statute, statutes

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:30-31

UDB:

30 "We will not allow our daughters to marry people who live in this land who do not worship Yahweh, and we will not allow our sons to marry them.

31 If people from other countries who live in this land bring us grain or other things to sell to us on Sabbath days or any other sacred day, we will not buy anything from them. And in every seventh year, we will give rest to the fields and we will not plant any crops that one year, and we will cancel all debts to other Jews.

ULB:

30 We promised that we would not give our daughters to the people of the land or take their daughters for our sons. **31** We also promised that if the people of the land bring goods or any grain to sell on the Sabbath day, we would not buy from them on the Sabbath or on any holy day. Every seventh year we will let our fields rest, and we will cancel all debts contracted by other Jews.

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, the people describe the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah 10:29.

would not give our daughters to the people of the land or take their daughters for our sons

This means that they would not allow their sons and daughters to marry them. AT: "would not give our daughters to marry the people of the land or take their daughters to marry our sons" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the people of the land

This refers to the people who live in their land who do not worship Yahweh. AT: "the people of this land who do not worship Yahweh" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

We promised … we would not give … we would not buy … we will let … we will cancel

The pronoun "we" here includes Nehemiah and the Jewish people, but not the reader of this book. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive "We")

seventh year

"year 7" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

we will let our fields rest

This is an idiom. AT: "we will not plow our fields" or "we will not grow anything in our fields" (See: Idiom)

we will cancel all debts contracted by other Jews

"we will cancel all debts to other Jews" or "we will forgive all debts owned to us by other Jews"

translationWords

- promise, promises, promised
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- son, sons
- grain, grains, grainfields
- Sabbath
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless
- Jew, Jewish, Jews

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:32-33

UDB:

32 We each also promised ourselves that every year we will pay about 5 grams of silver for those who serve and take care of the temple. **33** With that money they can buy these things: The bread on display before God, the flour that is offered to God by burning it on the altar each day, the animals that were killed and completely burned on the altar, the sacred offerings for the Sabbath days and for celebrating the new moons and other festivals and offerings that are dedicated to God, the animals to be sacrificed to pay the penalty for the sins of the people of Israel, and anything else that is needed for the work of taking care of the temple.

ULB:

32 We accepted the commands to give a third of a shekel each year for the service of the house of our God, **33** to provide for the bread of the presence, and for the regular grain offering, the burnt offerings on the Sabbaths, the new moon festivals and appointed feasts, and for the holy offerings, and for the sin offerings to make atonement for Israel, as well as for all the work of the house of our God.

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, the people continue describing the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah 10:29.

We accepted the commands

"We promised to obey the command"

We accepted

The pronoun "we" here includes all the Israelites including Nehemiah except for the priest and Levites, and does not include the reader of this book (See: Exclusive and Inclusive "We")

a third of a shekel

"1/3 of a shekel." "A third" means one part out of three equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "5 grams of sliver" (See: Biblical Money and Fractions)

for the service of

"to pay for the care of"

the bread of the presence

This refers to the 12 loaves of bread baked without yeast kept in the temple and used to symbolize God's presence with His people.

the new moon festivals

These were celebrations held when the moon was just a small crescent in the sky.

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- bread
- grain offering, grain offerings
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Sabbath
- festival, festivals
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- feast, feasts, feasting
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sin offering, sin offerings
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- Israel, Israelites
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:34-36

UDB:

34 Each year the priests, the descendants of Levi who help the priests, and the rest of us will cast lots to determine for that year which families within the Levites will provide wood to burn on the altar to burn the sacrifices in the house of our God, as it is written in the law of God.

35 We promise that each year each family will take to the temple an offering from the first food that we grow in our soil and harvest for food, and from the firstfruits that grow on our trees that year.

36 We will take to the house of God our firstborn sons and we will also bring firstborn calves and lambs and baby goats to be dedicated to God. That is what is written in God's laws that we must do.

ULB:

34 The priests, the Levites, and the people cast lots for the wood offering. The lots would select which of our families would bring wood into the house of our God at the appointed times each year, to be burned on the altar of Yahweh our God, as it is written in the law. **35** We promised to bring to the house of Yahweh the firstfruits grown from our soil, and the firstfruits of every tree each year. **36** As it is written in the law, we promised to bring to the house of God and to the priests who serve there, the firstborn of our sons and of our herds and flocks.

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, the people continue describing the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah 10:29.

to be burned

This can be stated in active form. AT: "for the Levites to burn" (See: Active or Passive)

as it is written

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as it states" (See: Active or Passive)

from our soil

"in our soil" or "on our land"

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- lots, casting lots
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- family, families
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- altar, altars
- Yahweh
- God
- written
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- promise, promises, promised
- firstfruits
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- firstborn
- son, sons
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:37-38

UDB:

 37 We will also take to the priests at the temple the flour made from the first grain that we harvest each year, and our other offerings of wine, olive oil, and fruit. We will also take the tithes to the descendants of Levi who help the priests. **38** A priest, one who is a descendant of Aaron, will be with the Levites and supervise them when they collect the tithes. Then the descendants of Levi must take a portion of it, ten percent of the things that people bring, and put it in the storerooms in the temple.

ULB:

37 We will bring the first of our dough and our grain offerings, and the fruit of every tree, and the new wine and the oil we will bring to the priests, to the storerooms of the house of our God. We will bring to the Levites the tithes from our soil because the Levites collect the tithes in all the towns where we work. **38** A priest, a descendant of Aaron, must be with the Levites when they receive the tithes. The Levites must bring a tenth of the tithes to the house of our God to the storerooms of the treasury.

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, the people continue describing the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah verse 29.

We will bring … We will bring

The pronoun "we" here includes Nehemiah and the Israelites except for the priests and the Levites, and also does not include the reader of this book (See: Exclusive and Inclusive "We")

our dough

Possible meanings are that this refers to 1) dough made from coarse flour, 2) coarse flour, or 3) ground grain.

the new wine and the oil

The words "first of" are understood from the begininng of the sentnces. They can be repeated. AT: "the first of the new wine and of the oil" or "the best of the new wine and of the oil" (See: Ellipsis)

the storerooms of the house of our God

"the places where things are stored in the temple"

the tithes from our soil

Here "our soil" refers to everything that is grown in the ground. AT: "the tithes of what we grow in the ground" (See: Synecdoche)

they receive the tithes

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the people give them the tithes" (See: Active or Passive)

a tenth

This means one part out of ten equal parts. (See: Fractions)

the storerooms of the treasury

"the storerooms in the temple"

translationWords

- grain offering, grain offerings
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- priest, priests, priesthood
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Aaron
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 10:39

UDB:

39 The descendants of Levi and some of the people of Israel must take the offerings of grain, wine, and olive oil to the storerooms where the various utensils are kept that are used by those who serve in the temple. That is the place where the priests who are serving at that time, the gatekeepers, and where those who sing in the temple choir, live.

We promise that we will not neglect taking care of the temple of our God."

ULB:

39 For the people of Israel and the descendants of Levi are to bring the contributions of grain, new wine, and oil to the storerooms where the articles of the sanctuary are kept and where the priests who are serving, and the gatekeepers, and the singers stay.

We will not neglect the house of our God.

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses, the people finish describing the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah 10:29.

the storerooms where the articles of the sanctuary are kept

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the rooms where the priests keep the things that are used in the temple" (See: Active or Passive)

We will not neglect the house of our God

This can be stated in positive form. AT: "We will care for the temple"

We will

The pronoun "we" here includes Nehemiah and all the people of Israel but does not include the reader of this book. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive "We")

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- sanctuary
- priest, priests, priesthood
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- house of God, Yahweh's house

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The places where the Jews lived

Some people lived in Jerusalem, but most people lived in villages and towns away from Jerusalem. They lived there in order to farm the land and raise their animals. The city with its walls was there to provide all of the people with protection if enemies attacked them.

Links:

- **Nehemiah 11:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 11:1-2

UDB:

1 The Israelite leaders and their families settled in Jerusalem. The remainder of the people cast lots to select one family out of ten who would live in Jerusalem, the city set apart for God. The remaining nine lived in the other towns. **2** Those people asked God to bless those who volunteered to live in Jerusalem.

ULB:

1 The leaders of the people lived in Jerusalem, and the rest of the people cast lots to bring one of ten to live in Jerusalem, the holy city, and the other nine remained in other towns. **2** Then the people blessed all those who willingly offered to live in Jerusalem.

translationNotes

the people cast lots

"the people threw marked stones"

to bring one of ten

"to bring one family out of every ten families"

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Jerusalem
- lots, casting lots
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:3-4

UDB:

3 These are the provincial officials who came to live in Jerusalem. But in the cities of Judah everyone lived on his own family property in their towns. Some from Israel, the priests, the Levites, the temple servants, and the descendants of Solomon's servants came to live in Jerusalem. **4** But some of the people of Judah and the people of Benjamin stayed and lived in Jerusalem.

These are from the relatives of Judah: Athaiah son of Uzziah, the son of Zechariah, the son of Amariah, the son of Shephatiah, the son of Mahalalel, a descendant of Perez.

ULB:

3 These are the provincial officials who lived in Jerusalem. However, in the towns of Judah everyone lived on his own land, including some Israelites, priests, Levites, temple servants, and descendants of Solomon's servants. **4** In Jerusalem lived some of the descendants of Judah and some of the descendants of Benjamin.

The people from Judah included: Athaiah son of Uzziah son of Zechariah son of Amariah son of Shephatiah son of Mahalalel, a descendant of Perez.

translationNotes

on his own land, including some Israelites

"on his own land: Israelites"

some of the descendants of Judah and some of the descendants of Benjamin

"some of the people of Judah and some of the people of Benjamin"

The people from Judah included:

"From the descendants of Judah:"

Judah … Benjamin … Athaiah … Uzziah … Zechariah … Amariah … Shephatiah … Mahalalel … Perez

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

a descendant of Perez

"from the descendants of Perez"

translationWords

- Jerusalem
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- temple
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Solomon
- Judah
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- son, sons
- Zechariah (OT)

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:5-6

UDB:

5 And there was Maaseiah the son of Baruch, who was the son of Colhozeh, who was the son of Hazaiah, who was the son of Adaiah, who was the son of Joiarib, who was the son of Zechariah, who was a descendant of Judah's son Shelah. **6** There were 468 men who were descendants of Perez who lived in the city of Jerusalem. These men were very brave and skilled in combat.

ULB:

5 There was Maaseiah son of Baruch son of Kol-Hozeh son of Hazaiah son of Adaiah son of Joiarib son of Zechariah, the son of the Shilonite. **6** All the sons of Perez who lived in Jerusalem were 468. They were outstanding men.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the provincial officers who lived in Jerusalem.

Maaseiah … Baruch … Kol-Hozeh … Hazaiah … Adaiah … Joiarib … Zechariah … Perez

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shilonite

This refers to a person who comes from the town of Shiloh.

All … were 468

"All … were four hundred and sixty-eight." Perez had 468 descendants who lived in Jerusalem. (See: Numbers)

They were outstanding men

"They were courageous men" or "They were valiant men"

translationWords

- son, sons
- Zechariah (OT)
- Jerusalem

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:7-9

UDB:

⁷ One of the men of the tribe of Benjamin who decided to live in Jerusalem was Sallu son of Meshullam, the son of Joed, the son of Pedaiah, the son of Kolaiah, the son of Maaseiah, the son of Ithiel, the son of Jeshaiah. ⁸ Two of Sallu's relatives, Gabbai and Sallai, also settled in Jerusalem.

Altogether, 928 people from the tribe of Benjamin settled in Jerusalem. ⁹ Their leader was Zichri. The official who was second in command in Jerusalem was Hassenuah.

ULB:

⁷ These are the descendants of Benjamin: Sallu son of Meshullam son of Joed son of Pedaiah son of Kolaiah son of Maaseiah son of Ithiel son of Jeshaiah, ⁸ and those following him, Gabbai and Sallai, 928 men. [1] ⁹ Joel son of Zichri was their overseer, and Judah son of Hassenuah was second in command over the city.

11:8 [1]Instead of *those following him* , which some Hebrew copies and some other ancient versions have, but other ancient copies read *his brothers* .

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the provincial officers who lived in Jerusalem.

These are the descendants

"These are some of the descendants." Your language may need to specify that this is not a list of every descendant.

Benjamin … Sallu … Meshullam … Joed … Pedaiah … Kolaiah … Maaseiah … Ithiel … Jeshaiah … Gabbai … Sallai … Joel … Zichri … Judah … Hassenuah

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

928 men

"nine hundred and twenty-eight men." (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- son, sons
- oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:10-12

UDB:

10 The priests who settled in Jerusalem were Jedaiah son of Joiarib,

11 Seraiah the son of Hilkiah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, who was previously the leader of all the priests. **12** Altogether, 822 members of that clan worked in the temple.

Another priest who settled in Jerusalem was Adaiah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Pelaliah, the son of Amzi, the son of Zechariah, the son of Pashhur, the son of Malchijah.

ULB:

10 From the priests: Jedaiah son of Joiarib, Jakin, **11** Seraiah son of Hilkiah son of Meshullam son of Zadok son of Meraioth son of Ahitub, the chief official of the house of God, **12** and their associates who did the work for the house, 822 men, along with Adaiah son of Jeroham son of Pelaliah son of Amzi son of Zechariah son of Pashhur son of Malchijah.

translationNotes

Jedaiah … Joiarib … Jakin … Seraiah … Hilkiah … Meshullam … Zadok … Meraioth … Ahitub … Adaiah … Jeroham … Pelaliah … Amzi … Zechariah … Pashhur … Malchijah

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

their associates

"their brothers" or "their kinsmen"

who did the work for the house

"who worked in the temple." The "house" referred to here is the "house of God" mentioned in the previous verse.

822 men

"eight hundred and twenty-two men" (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- son, sons
- Zadok

- house of God, Yahweh's house
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:13-14

UDB:

13 Altogether, there were 242 members of that clan who were leaders of the clan who settled in Jerusalem.

Another priest who settled in Jerusalem was Amashsai the son of Azarel, the son of Ahzai, the son of Meshillemoth, the son of Immer. **14** There were 128 members of that clan who were valiant soldiers who settled in Jerusalem. Their leader was Zabdiel the son of Haggedolim.

ULB:

13 His brothers were heads of clans, 242 men; and Amashsai son of Azarel son of Ahzai son of Meshillemoth son of Immer, **14** and their brothers, 128 courageous fighting men; their overseer was Zabdiel son of Haggedolim.

translationNotes

His brothers

the brothers of Adaiah, the son of Jeroham (Nehemiah 11:12).

brothers

This word is a metaphor for 1) fellow Israelites or 2) people who did the same work. AT: "associates" or "fellow workers" (See: Metaphor)

242 men

"two hundred and forty-two men" (See: Numbers)

Amashsai ... Azarel ... Ahzai ... Meshillemoth ... Immer ... Zabdiel ... Haggedolim

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

128 courageous fighting men

"one hundred and twenty-eight courageous fighting men." These were "valiant warriors" or "courageous warriors." (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- family, families
- son, sons

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:15-16

UDB:

15 Another descendant of Levi who settled in Jerusalem was Shemaiah the son of Hasshub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Bunni.

16 Two others were Shabbethai and Jozabad, who were prominent men, leaders of the Levites, who supervised the work outside the temple.

ULB:

15 From the Levites: Shemaiah son of Hasshub son of Azrikam son of Hashabiah son of Bunni, **16** and Shabbethai and Jozabad, who were from the leaders of the Levites and were in charge of the outside work of the house of God.

translationNotes

Shemaiah … Hasshub … Azrikam … Hashabiah … Bunni … Shabbethai … Jozabad

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

who were from the leaders of the Levites and were in charge

"from the leaders of the Levites, were in charge"

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- son, sons
- works, deeds, work, acts
- house of God, Yahweh's house

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:17-18

UDB:

17 Another one was Mattaniah, the son of Mika, the son of Zabdi, the son of Asaph. Mattaniah directed the temple choir when they sang the prayers to thank God. His assistant was Bakbukiah. Another one was Abda, the son of Shammua, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun. **18** Altogether, there were 284 Levites in the city set apart for God.

ULB:

17 There was Mattaniah son of Mika son of Zabdi, a descendant of Asaph, who was the director who began the thanksgiving in prayer, and Bakbukiah, the second among his brothers, and Abda son of Shammua son of Galal son of Jeduthun. **18** All the Levites in the holy city numbered 284.

translationNotes

Mattaniah … Mika … Zabdi … Asaph … Bakbukiah … Abda … Shammua … Galal … Jeduthun

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

who began the thanksgiving in prayer

That is, who directed the singers.

Bakbukiah, the second among his brothers

Possible meanings are 1) Bakbukiah was Mattaniah's kinsman and second in authority to Mattaniah or 2) "Bakbukiah, who led a second group of singers."

brothers

Another possible meaning is "associates" or "fellow workers."

the holy city

This expression refers to the city of Jerusalem.

numbered 284

"numbered two hundred and eighty-four." There were 284 Levites in Jerusalem. (See: Numbers)

translationWords

- son, sons
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:19-21

UDB:

19 The gatekeepers who settled in Jerusalem were Akkub and Talmon. Altogether, there were 172 of them and their relatives who settled in Jerusalem.

20 The other Israelite people including descendants of Levi and priests lived on their own property in other towns and cities in Judea.

21 But the temple workers lived in Ophel in Jerusalem. They were supervised by Ziha and Gishpa.

ULB:

19 The gatekeepers: Akkub, Talmon, and their associates, who kept watch at the gates, 172 men. **20** The remainder of Israel and of the priests and the Levites were in all the towns of Judah. Everyone lived on his own inherited property. **21** The temple workers lived in Ophel, and Ziha and Gishpa were in charge of them.

translationNotes

gatekeepers

people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

Akkub … Talmon … Ziha … Gishpa

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

172 men

"one hundred and seventy-two men" (See: Numbers)

Ophel

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- temple

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:22-24

UDB:

22 The man who supervised the descendants of Levi who lived in Jerusalem was Uzzi the son of Bani, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Mika. Uzzi belonged to the clan of Asaph, the clan that was in charge of the music in the temple. **23** The king of Persia had commanded that the clans should decide what work each clan should do to lead the music in the temple each day.

24 Pethahiah son of Meshezabel, who was from the clan of Zerah and a descendant of Judah, was the ambassador of the Israelites to the king of Persia.

ULB:

22 The chief officer over the Levites in Jerusalem was Uzzi son of Bani son of Hashabiah son of Mattaniah son of Mika, of the descendants of Asaph, singers over the work in the house of God. **23** They were under orders from the king, and firm orders were given for the singers as every day required. **24** Then Pethahiah son of Meshezabel, a descendant of Zerah son of Judah, was at the king's side in all matters concerning the people.

translationNotes

The chief officer over

"The overseer of"

Uzzi … Bani … Hashabiah … Mattaniah … Mika … Asaph … Pethahiah … Meshezabel … Zerah … Judah

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

They were under orders from the king

"The king had told them what to do"

firm orders were given for the singers

This can be translated in active form. AT: "the king had told them specifically what to do about the singers" (See: Active or Passive)

at the king's side in all matters concerning the people

"at the Persian king's side as an adviser in all matters concerning the Jewish people"

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- Jerusalem
- son, sons
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Asaph
- works, deeds, work, acts
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:25-27

UDB:

25 Some of the people who did not settle in Jerusalem lived in villages close to their farms. Some from the tribe of Judah lived in villages near Kiriath Arba, Dibon, and Jekabzeel. **26** Some lived in Jeshua, in Moladah, in Bethpelet, **27** in Hazarshual, and in Beersheba and the villages near it.

ULB:

25 As for the villages and their fields, some of the people of Judah lived in Kiriath Arba and its villages, and in Dibon and its villages, and in Jekabzeel and its villages, **26** and in Jeshua, Moladah, Beth Pelet, **27** Hazar Shual, and Beersheba and its villages.

translationNotes

Kiriath Arba … Dibon … Jekabzeel … Jeshua … Moladah … Beth Pelet … Hazar Shual … Beersheba

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:28-30

UDB:

28 Others lived in Ziklag, in Mekonah and the villages near it, **29** in Enrimmon, in Zorah, in Jarmuth, **30** in Zanoah, in Adullam, and in the villages near those cities. Some lived in Lachish and in the nearby villages, and some lived in Azekah and the villages near it. All of those people lived in Judea, in the area between Beersheba in the south and Hinnom Valley in the north, at the edge of Jerusalem.

ULB:

28 Some of the people of Judah lived in Ziklag, Mekonah and its villages, **29** Enrimmon, Zorah, Jarmuth, **30** Zanoah, Adullam, and their villages, and in Lachish its fields and Azekah and its villages. So they lived from Beersheba to the Valley of Hinnom.

translationNotes

Ziklag … Mekonah … Enrimmon … Zorah … Jarmuth … Zanoah … Adullam … Lachish … Azekah … Beersheba … Valley of Hinnom

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

they lived

Here "they" refers to the people of Judah.

translationWords

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Beersheba

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 11:31-36

UDB:

31 The people of the tribe of Benjamin lived in Geba, Micmash, Aija, Bethel and its nearby villages, **32** in Anathoth, in Nob, in Ananiah, **33** in Hazor, in Ramah, in Gittaim, **34** in Hadid, in Zeboim, in Neballat, **35** in Lod, in Ono, and in Craftsmen's Valley.

36 Some of the Levites who had lived in Judea were sent to live with the people of Benjamin.

ULB:

31 The people of Benjamin also lived from Geba onward, at Mikmash and Aija, at Bethel and its villages, **32** at Anathoth, Nob, Ananiah, **33** Hazor, Ramah, Gittaim, **34** Hadid, Zeboim, Neballat, **35** Lod, and Ono, the valley of craftsmen. **36** Some of the Levites who lived in Judah were assigned to the people of Benjamin.

translationNotes

The people of Benjamin also lived from Geba onward, at Mikmash and Aija

"The people of Benjamin lived in Geba, Mikmash and Aija"

Geba … Mikmash … Aija … Bethel … Anathoth, Nob, Ananiah, Hazor, Ramah, Gittaim, Hadid, Zeboim, Neballat, Lod … Ono … Judah

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Aija

This is possibly another name for the town of Ai.

the valley of craftsmen

Possible meanings are 1) this is a description of Ono or 2) it is "Craftsmen's Valley" or "the Valley of Craftsmen," another name for Ono, or 3) it is a different place from Ono, "and the Valley of Craftsmen." (See: How to Translate Names)

Some of the Levites who lived in Judah were assigned to the people of Benjamin

"Some of the Judean divisions of Levites were assigned to live with the people of Benjamin"

translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Bethel
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Judah, kingdom of Judah

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 11 General Notes
- Nehemiah 11 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Dedication of the wall

In the ancient Near East, it was common to dedicate an important structure to a god. When it was completed, the wall was dedicated to Yahweh. Long lists of people are present, indicating that "everyone" was present for this and praised Yahweh. (See: god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry)

Links:

- **Nehemiah 12:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 12:1-3

UDB:

1 These are the names of the priests and descendants of Levi that returned from Babylonia with Zerubbabel and Jeshua the high priest. They included

Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra,

2 Amariah, Malluk, Hattush,

3 Shecaniah, Rehum, Meremoth,

ULB:

1 These were the priests and Levites who came up with Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and with Jeshua: Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra, **2** Amariah, Malluk, Hattush, **3** Shecaniah, Rehum, and Meremoth.

translationNotes

who came up

"who arrived from Babylonia"

with Zerubbabel

"under the leadership of Zerubbabel"

Zerubbabel … Shealtiel … Jeshua … Seraiah … Jeremiah … Ezra … Amariah … Malluk … Hattush … Shecaniah … Rehum … Meremoth

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jeshua

The original readers would have understood that Jeshua was the high priest. AT: "Jeshua the high priest" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- son, sons
- Ezra

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:4-7

UDB:

⁴ Iddo, Ginnethon, Abijah,

⁵ Mijamin, Moadiah, Bilgah,

⁶ Shemaiah, Joiarib, Jedaiah,

⁷ Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, and Jedaiah.

All those men were leaders of the priests and their associates during the time that Jeshua was the leader of all the priests.

ULB:

⁴ There were Iddo, Ginnethon, Abijah, ⁵ Mijamin, Moadiah, Bilgah, ⁶ Shemaiah, and Joiarib, Jedaiah, ⁷ Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, and Jedaiah. These were the leaders of the priests and their associates in the days of Jeshua.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The list that began in Nehemiah 12:1 continues.

There were

These words have been added for this translation. If you continue the list that began in Nehemiah 12:1, you can omit these words.

Iddo ... Ginnethon ... Abijah ... Mijamin ... Moadiah ... Bilgah ... Shemaiah ... Joiarib ... Jedaiah ... Sallu ... Amok ... Hilkiah ... Jedaiah ... Jeshua.

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ginnethon

Ginnethoi may be another form of the name "Ginnethon."

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Here is a list of the descendants of Levi who returned: Jeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah, and Mattaniah. Mattaniah and his brothers led the people in singing songs to thank God. ⁹ Bakbukiah and Unni, their associates, formed a choir that stood across from the other group when they sang.

ULB:

⁸ The Levites were Jeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah, and Mattaniah, who was in charge of the thanksgiving songs, along with his associates. ⁹ Bakbukiah and Unni, their associates, stood opposite them during the service.

translationNotes

Jeshua … Binnui … Kadmiel … Sherebiah … Judah … Mattaniah … Bakbukiah … Unni

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

stood opposite them during the service

Possible meanings are 1) this was during a worship service and these were two groups of singers or other worshipers, or 2) these groups guarded the temple at different times, or "took turns guarding the temple."

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:10-11

UDB:

10 Jeshua the high priest was the father of Joiakim, who was the father of Eliashib, who was the father of Joiada, **11** who was the father of Jonathan, who was the father of Jaddua.

ULB:

10 Jeshua was the father of Joiakim, Joiakim was the father of Eliashib, Eliashib was the father of Joiada, **11** Joiada was the father of Jonathan, and Jonathan was the father of Jaddua.

translationNotes

Jeshua ... Joiakim ... Eliashib ... Joiada ... Jonathan ... Jaddua

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jeshua was the father of Joiakim

This was the same Jeshua named in Nehemiah 12:1. The original readers would have understood that Jeshua was the high priest. AT: "Jeshua the high priest was the father of Joiakim" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:12-14

UDB:

12 When Joiakim was the leader of all the priests, these were the leaders of the families of priests:

Meraiah, of the family of Seraiah,

Hananiah, of the family of Jeremiah,

13 Meshullam, of the family of Ezra,

Jehohanan, of the family of Amariah,

14 Jonathan, of the family of Malluk,

Joseph, of the family of Shecaniah.

ULB:

12 In the days of Joiakim these were the priests, the leaders of the families: Meraiah was the leader of Seraiah, Hananiah was the leader of Jeremiah, **13** Meshullam was the leader of Ezra, Jehohanan was the leader of Amariah, **14** Jonathan was the leader of Malluk, and Joseph was the leader of Shebaniah. [1]

12:14 [1]Many modern versions, including the ULB and UDB, have *Malluk* as a correction for *Malluki* in the Hebrew text. The correct form of this name appears in Neh. 12:2.

translationNotes

Joiakim … Meraiah … Hananiah … Meshullam … Jehohanan … Jonathan … Joseph

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Seraiah … Jeremiah … Ezra … Amariah … Malluk … Shebaniah

These are names of families named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Ezra

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:15-21

UDB:

15 More leaders were Adna, of the family of Harim,

Helkai, of the family of Meremoth,

16 Zechariah, of the family of Iddo,

Meshullam, of the family of Ginnethon,

17 Zicri, of the family of Abijah.

There was also a leader of the family of Miniamin.

Piltai, of the family of Moadiah.

18 Shammua, of the family of Bilgah,

Jehonathan, of the family of Shemaiah,

19 Mattenai, of the family of Joiarib,

Uzzi, of the family of Jedaiah,

20 Kallai, of the family of Sallu,

Eber, of the family of Amok,

21 Hashabiah, of the family of Hilkiah,

and Nethanel, of the family of Jedaiah.

ULB:

15 Adna was the leader of Harim, Helkai the leader of Meremoth, **16** Zechariah was the leader of Iddo, Meshullam was the leader of Ginnethon, and **17** Zichri was the leader of Abijah. ... of Miniamin. Piltai was the leader of Moadiah. [1] **18** Shammua was the leader of Bilgah, Jehonathan was the leader of Shemaiah, **19** Mattenai was the leader of Joiarib, Uzzi was the leader of Jedaiah, **20** Kallai was the leader of Sallu, Eber was the leader of Amok, **21** Hashabiah was the leader of Hilkiah, and Nethanel was the leader of Jedaiah.

12:17 [1]The expression ... *of Miniamin* is incomplete, because no leader of that family is named in the Hebrew text.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The list that began in Nehemiah 12:12 continues.

Adna … Helkai … Zechariah … Meshullam … Zichri … Piltai … Shammua … Jehonathan … Mattenai … Uzzi … Kallai … Eber … Hashabiah … Nethanel

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Harim … Meremoth … Iddo … Ginnethon … Abijah … Miniamin … Moadiah … Bilgah … Shemaiah … Joiarib … Jedaiah … Sallu … Amok … Hilkiah … Jedaiah

These are all names of families that are named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)

was the leader of

"was the leader of the family of" or "was the leader of the descendants of"

Meshullam was the leader of Ginnethon

Ginnethon may be another form of the name Ginnethoi.

… of Miniamin

The people who made the copies of Hebrew text mistakenly left out the name of the leader of the family of Miniamin. Translators may supply a footnote explaining this. The ULB uses "…" to show that the name of the leader is missing. AT: "Someone was the leader of Miniamin"

Moadiah

Maadiah may be another form of the name Moadiah.

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:22-23

UDB:

22 During time when Eliashib led the Levites, this is a list of them all: Elisahib, Joiada, Johanan, and Jaddua were the leaders of all the priests. They wrote the names of the families who were descendants of Levi. When Darius was king of Persia, the priests were responsible for recording the names of those who were the heads of families. **23** They wrote the names of the leaders of the families who were descendants of Levi in the book of the annals until the time that Eliashib's grandson Johanan was the leader of all the priests.

ULB:

22 In the days of Eliashib, the Levites Eliashib, Joiada, Johanan, and Jaddua were recorded as the heads of families, and the priests were recorded during the reign of Darius the Persian. **23** The descendants of Levi, their leaders of families were recorded in the book of the annals up to the days of Johanan son of Eliashib.

translationNotes

Eliashib ... Joiada, Johanan ... Jaddua

names of men (See: How to Translate Names)

during the reign of Darius

Another possible meaning is "until the reign of Darius"

recorded in the book of the annals

This may refer to the Book of Chronicles. The scribes wrote the words in the verses above in a book that recorded the events of each day.

up to the days of Johanan son of Eliashib

The records in the temple recorded only up until Johanan.

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- family, families
- priest, priests, priesthood
- reign, reigns, reigned, reigning

- Darius
- Persia, Persians
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- son, sons

Links:

Nehemiah 12:24-26

UDB:

24 These were the leaders of the Levites: Hashabiah, Sherebiah, Jeshua son of Kadmiel, and their brothers who stood across from them to praise and give thanks to God. They did that just as King David, the man who served God, had instructed them.

25 Mattaniah, Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub were the gatekeepers. They stood guard at the storerooms close to the gates of the temple. **26** They did that work during the time of Joiakim son of Jeshua and the grandson of Jehozadak, during the time of Nehemiah the governor and Ezra the priest. Ezra also knew the Jewish laws very well.

ULB:

24 The leaders of the Levites were Hashabiah, Sherebiah, and Jeshua son of Kadmiel, with their associates, who stood opposite them to give praise and to give thanks, responding section by section, in obedience to the command of David, the man of God. **25** Mattaniah, Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub were gatekeepers standing guard at the storerooms by the gates. **26** They served in the days of Joiakim son of Jeshua son of Jozadak, and in the days of Nehemiah the governor and of Ezra the priest and scribe.

translationNotes

Hashabiah, Sherebiah ... Jeshua ... Kadmiel ... David ... Mattaniah, Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub ... Joiakim ... Jeshua ... Jozadak ... Nehemiah ... Ezra

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

who stood opposite them to give praise and to give thanks, responding section by section

This refers to how they sang some of their songs in worship. A leader or one group would sing a phrase, then one or two groups that "stood opposite them" would sing a phrase in response.

obedience to the command of David

King David had commanded the Levites how they were to organize and lead worship.

in the days of Joiakim ... Jozadak, and in the days of Nehemiah the governor and of Ezra ... scribe

The date was fixed by listing those who were leading the Jews at the time. "when Joiakim ... Jozadak was high priest, and when Nehemiah was governor and Ezra ... was the scribe"

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- David
- God
- Obadiah
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- son, sons
- govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls
- Ezra
- priest, priests, priesthood
- scribe, scribes

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:27-28

UDB:

27 When we dedicated the wall around Jerusalem, we summoned the descendants of Levi from the places around Israel where they lived, so they could come to celebrate the dedication of the wall. They would sing songs to thank God and many of them made music by playing cymbals and harps and other stringed instruments. **28** We summoned the descendants of Levi who constantly sang together. They came to Jerusalem from nearby areas where they had settled, and from places around Netophah, southeast of Jerusalem.

ULB:

27 At the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem, the people sought out the Levites wherever they lived, to bring them to Jerusalem to celebrate the dedication with joy, with thanksgivings and singing with cymbals, harps, and with lyres. **28** The fellowship of singers gathered together from the district around Jerusalem and from the villages of the Netophathites.

translationNotes

At the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem

Possible meanings are 1) "At the time when they dedicated the wall of Jerusalem" or 2) "So that the dedication of Jerusalem's wall could take place."

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: Translate Unknowns)

translationWords

- dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication
- Jerusalem
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- harp, harps, harpist, harpists
- lute, lyre, lyres

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah

- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:29-30

UDB:

29 They came also from three places northeast of Jerusalem, Beth Gilgal and the areas around Geba and Azmaveth. Near Jerusalem the singers built villages where they lived.

30 The priests and descendants of Levi performed rituals to make them clean in God's eyes, and they did the same for all the people, and even for the gates of the city and finally, for the wall.

ULB:

29 They also came from Beth Gilgal and from the fields of Geba and Azmaveth, for the singers had built for themselves villages around Jerusalem. **30** The priests and the Levites purified themselves, and then they purified the people, the gates, and the wall.

translationNotes

Beth Gilgal ... Geba and Azmaveth

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

translationWords

- Jerusalem
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- pure, purify, purification
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:31

UDB:

31 Then I gathered together the leaders of Judah on top of the wall, and I appointed them to lead two large groups to march around the city on top of the wall, thanking God. As they faced the city, one group walked to the right toward the Dung Gate.

ULB:

31 Then I had the leaders of Judah go up to the top of the wall, and I appointed two large choirs who gave thanks. One went to the right on the wall toward the Dung Gate.

translationNotes

the leaders of Judah

the leaders of the people who lived in the region of Judah

translationWords

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- dung, manure
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:32-35

UDB:

32 Behind their leaders marched Hoshaiah and half of the leaders of Judah. **33** Those who followed after them were Azariah, Ezra, Meshullam, **34** Judah, Benjamin, Shemaiah, Jeremiah, **35** and some of the priests' sons who played their trumpets, including Zechariah the son of Jonathan, the son of Shemaiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Micaiah, the son of Zaccur, a descendant of Asaph.

ULB:

32 Hoshaiah and half the leaders of Judah followed them, **33** and after them went Azariah, Ezra, Meshullam, **34** Judah, Benjamin, Shemaiah, Jeremiah, **35** and some of the priests' sons with trumpets, and Zechariah son of Jonathan son of Shemaiah son of Mattaniah son of Micaiah son of Zaccur son of Asaph.

translationNotes

Hoshaiah … Azariah, Ezra, Meshullam, Judah, Benjamin, Shemaiah, Jeremiah … Zechariah … Jonathan … Shemaiah … Mattaniah … Micaiah … Zaccur … Asaph

These are the names of males. (See: How to Translate Names)

after them went

"behind them followed"

some of the priests' sons with trumpets, and Zechariah

Some versions read, "from among the priests with trumpets, Zechariah"

Zechariah son of Jonathan son of Shemaiah son of Mattaniah son of Micaiah son of Zaccur son of Asaph

All of the names after "Zechariah" are the ancestors of Zechariah. This list connects Zechariah with the famous singer Asaph. "Zechariah who was the son of Jonathan, who was the son of Shemaiah, who was the son of Mattaniah, who was the son of Micaiah, who was the son of Zaccur son of Asaph"

translationWords

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Ezra

- priest, priests, priesthood
- son, sons
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Asaph

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:36-37

UDB:

36 Behind them marched other members of Zechariah's family, including Shemaiah, Azarel, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethanel, Judah, and Hanani. They all were playing the same kinds of musical instruments that King David had played many years previously. Ezra, the man who knew the Jewish laws very well, marched in front of this group. **37** When they reached the Fountain Gate, they went up the steps to the city of David, past the location of David's palace, and then to the wall at the Water Gate, on the east side of the city.

ULB:

36 There also were Zechariah's relatives, Shemaiah, Azarel, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethanel, Judah, Hanani, with the musical instruments of David the man of God. Ezra the scribe was in front of them. **37** By the Fountain Gate they went straight up on the stairs of the city of David, by the stairway to the wall above David's palace, to the Water Gate on the east.

translationNotes

There also were

"Along with them were"

Zechariah … Shemaiah, Azarel, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethanel, Judah, Hanani … David … Ezra

These are the names of males. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ezra the scribe was in front of them

"Ezra the scribe was leading them"

Fountain Gate … Water Gate

These are the names of openings in the wall.

translationWords

- Zechariah (OT)
- David
- God
- Ezra
- scribe, scribes

- fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- city of David
- palace, palaces
- water, waters, watered, watering

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:38-39

UDB:

38 The other choir who were singing and thanking Yahweh marched to the left on top of the wall. I followed them with half of the people. We marched past the Tower of the Ovens to the Broad Wall. **39** From there we marched past Ephraim Gate, Jeshanah Gate, the Fish Gate, the Tower of Hananel, the Tower of the Hundred Soldiers, to the Sheep Gate. We finished marching near the gate into the temple.

ULB:

38 The other choir of those who gave thanks went in the other direction. I followed them on the wall with half the people, above the Tower of Ovens, to the Broad Wall, **39** and above the Gate of Ephraim, and by the Old Gate, and by the Fish Gate and the Tower of Hananel and the Tower of the Hundred, to the Sheep Gate, and they stopped at the Gate of the Guard.

translationNotes

choir

"group of singers"

I followed them

Nehemiah followed them.

Tower of Ovens … Tower of Hananel … Tower of the Hundred

These are the names of tall structures where people kept watch for danger. (See: How to Translate Names)

Broad Wall

This is a name for part of the wall.

Gate of Ephraim … Old Gate … Fish Gate … Sheep Gate … Gate of the Guard

These are the names of openings in the wall.

translationWords

- watchtower, watchtowers, tower
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:40-42

UDB:

⁴⁰ Both the groups reached the house of God as they were singing and thanking him. They stood in their places there. I and the leaders who were with me also stood in our places.

⁴¹ My group included the priests Eliakim, Maaseiah, Miniamin, Micaiah, Elioenai, Zechariah, and Hananiah, with their trumpets. ⁴² There was another named Maaseiah, Shemaiah, Eleazar, Uzzi, Jehohanan, Malchijah, Elam, and Ezer. The singers sang with Jezrahiah who was their leader.

ULB:

⁴⁰ So both choirs of those who gave thanks took their place in the house of God, and I also took my place with half of the officials with me. ⁴¹ Then the priests took their place: Eliakim, Maaseiah, Miniamin, Micaiah, Elioenai, Zechariah, and Hananiah, with the trumpets, ⁴² and also Maaseiah, Shemaiah, Eleazar, Uzzi, Jehohanan, Malchijah, Elam, and Ezer, and the singers made themselves heard and Jezrahiah was their leader.

translationNotes

I also took my place

Nehemiah is speaking here. AT: "I, Nehemiah, also took my place"

Eliakim … Maaseiah … Miniamin … Micaiah … Elioenai … Zechariah … Hananiah … Maaseiah … Shemaiah … Eleazar … Uzzi … Jehohanan … Malchijah … Elam … Ezer

These are the names of males who were the priests at that time. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jezrahiah

This is the name of a male who was the leader of the singers.

with the trumpets

Possible meanings are 1) only the first seven priests listed from Eliakim to Hananiah carried trumpets or 2) all 15 priests listed from Eliakim to Ezer carried trumpets.

made themselves heard

"sang loudly"

translationWords

- house of God, Yahweh's house
- priest, priests, priesthood
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:43

UDB:

43 After we went outside the temple, we offered many sacrifices. We men all rejoiced because God had caused us to be very happy. The women and the children also rejoiced. People far away could hear the noise that we made there in Jerusalem.

ULB:

43 They offered great sacrifices that day, and rejoiced, for God had made them rejoice with great joy. Also the women and the children rejoiced. So the joy of Jerusalem could be heard far away.

translationNotes

rejoice with great joy

"rejoice greatly"

So the joy of Jerusalem could be heard far away

"The joy of Jerusalem" here is a metonym for "the sound that the people of Jerusalem made." This can be translated in active form. AT: "people far away from Jerusalem could hear the sound that the people of Jerusalem made as they celebrated" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

translationWords

- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- Jerusalem

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:44-45

UDB:

44 On that day men were appointed to be in charge of the storerooms where they kept the money that people gave for the temple. They also were in charge of the tithes and the first part of the grain and fruit that was harvested each year. They also brought into the storerooms a part of the harvest from the fields for the priests and the descendants of Levi. This was done because the people of Judah were so happy to have servants serving in the house of Yahweh. **45** The priests and Levites were serving Yahweh in their rituals to purify things, and the musicians in the temple and the gatekeepers also did their work as King David and his son Solomon had declared that they should do.

ULB:

44 On that day men were appointed to be in charge of the storerooms for the contributions, the firstfruits, and the tithes, to gather into them the portions required by the law for the priests and for the Levites. Each was assigned to work the fields near the towns. For Judah rejoiced over the priests and the Levites who were standing before them. **45** They performed the service of their God, and the service of purification, and so did the singers and the gatekeepers, in keeping with the command of David and of Solomon his son.

translationNotes

men were appointed to be in charge

This can be stated in active form. It is not clear who appointed the men. AT: "they appointed men to be in charge" (See: Active or Passive)

the contributions

things the people gave to the priests

For Judah rejoiced over the priests and the Levites

It seems that the people appointed the men because the people of Judah were grateful for the priests and Levites who were serving.

who were standing before them

The Levites and priests were not just standing, they were serving in their roles. The meaning can be made explicit. AT: "who were standing before them serving God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

gatekeepers

These were people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

translationWords

- firstfruits
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- works, deeds, work, acts
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- God
- pure, purify, purification
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- David
- Solomon
- son, sons

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 12:46-47

UDB:

⁴⁶ Ever since the time of David and Asaph, there have been directors of the singers, and they sang songs to praise and thank God. ⁴⁷ During the years of Zerubbabel and in the days of Nehemiah the governor, all Israel contributed the food that the singers and temple gatekeepers needed every day. They set aside what the Levites needed to live on, and the Levites set aside for the descendants of Aaron, the first leader of all the priests, what they needed.

ULB:

⁴⁶ For long ago, in the days of David and Asaph, there were directors of singers, and there were songs of praise and thanksgiving to God. ⁴⁷ In the days of Zerubbabel and in the days of Nehemiah, all Israel gave the daily portions for the singers and the gatekeepers. They set aside the portion that was for the Levites, and the Levites set aside a portion for the descendants of Aaron.

translationNotes

there were directors of singers

This sentence tells why the people did what they did in Nehemiah 12:45 and gives us more information about the time when David told people how to worship at the temple.

In the days of Zerubbabel

Zerubbabel was a descendant of King David and one of the governors in the region of Judah.

They set aside the portion

"All Israel set aside the portion"

the descendants of Aaron

the priests in Israel, who descended from Aaron, the brother of Moses

translationWords

- David
- Asaph
- praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy
- God
- Nehemiah

- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Aaron

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes
- Nehemiah 12 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Nehemiah returns to Jerusalem

Nehemiah was eager to make sure that the Jews kept their promise to obey the law. When he returned from Persia, he found many things wrong: one of the store rooms in the temple had been converted into a guest room for Tobiah, the Levites had not received their portions for working in the temple, people were working on the Sabbath, and many had married heathen wives. (See: promise, promises, promised, law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, temple and Sabbath)

Links:

- **Nehemiah 13:01 Notes**

Nehemiah 13:1-3

UDB:

1 On that day the priests read and the people listened, and the passage was read with the laws God gave Moses that said no Amonite or Moabite was ever to be allowed to come into the place where God's people worship. **2** The reason for that was that the people of Ammon and the people of Moab did not give any food or water to the Israelites while the Israelites were going through their areas after they left Egypt. Instead, the people of Ammon and Moab paid money to Balaam to influence him to curse the Israelites. But God turned that attempt to curse Israel into a blessing. **3** So when the people heard these laws being read to them, they sent away all the people whose ancestors had come from other countries.

ULB:

1 On that day they read in the Book of Moses in the hearing of the people. It was found written in it that no Ammonite or Moabite should come into the assembly of God, forever. **2** This was because they had not come to the people of Israel with bread and with water, but they had hired Balaam to curse Israel. However, our God turned the curse into a blessing. **3** As soon as they heard the law, they separated out from Israel every foreign person.

translationNotes

in the hearing of the people

"so that the people could hear it"

should come into the assembly of God, forever

"should ever come into the assembly of God"

This was because

"They could not come into the assembly because"

translationWords

- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- written
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

- God
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- Israel, Israelites
- bread
- water, waters, watered, watering
- Balaam
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:4-5

UDB:

4 Previously, Eliashib the priest had been appointed to be in charge of the storerooms in the temple. He was a relative of Tobiah. **5** He allowed Eliashib to use a large room. There they had stored the grain offerings and the incense. They put there the equipment that is used in the temple. They put in there the offerings the people gave for the Levites. They brought in tithes of grain and wine and olive oil that God had commanded for the Levites, for the musicians, and the gatekeepers. And they brought in the gifts to support the other priests.

ULB:

4 Now before this Eliashib the priest was appointed over the storerooms of the house of our God. He was related to Tobiah. **5** Eliashib prepared for Tobiah a large storeroom, where previously they kept the grain offering, the incense, the articles, and the tithes of the grain, new wine, and the oil, which were designated for the Levites, the singers, the gatekeepers, and the contributions for the priests.

translationNotes

Eliashib the priest was appointed

This can be translated in active form. AT: "they appointed Eliashib the priest" or "the leaders appointed Eliashib the priest" (See: Active or Passive)

He was related to Tobiah

"Eliashib and Tobiah worked closely together"

Eliashib ... Tobiah

These are the names of men.

Eliashib prepared for Tobiah a large storeroom

"Eliashib prepared a large storeroom for Tobiah to use"

gatekeepers

people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- grain offering, grain offerings
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- incense, incenses
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:6-7

UDB:

6 During that time I was not in Jerusalem. It was the thirty-second year that Artaxerxes was the king of Babylonia, and I had gone back to report to the king what I had been doing. After I had been there a while, I requested the king to allow me to return to Jerusalem. **7** When I returned, I found out that Eliashib had done an evil thing. He let Tobiah take over a storeroom in the very house of God for his own use.

ULB:

6 But in all this time I was not in Jerusalem. For in the thirty-second year of Artaxerxes king of Babylon I went to the king. After some time I asked the king for permission to leave, **7** and I returned to Jerusalem. I understood the evil that Eliashib had done by giving Tobiah a storeroom in the courts of the house of God.

translationNotes

But in all this time I was not in Jerusalem

"During the time all this was happening, I was away from Jerusalem"

I was not

Here "I" refers to Nehemiah.

a storeroom in the courts of the house of God

This was a room which had previously been purified to store offering supplies (Nehemiah 13:5).

translationWords

- Jerusalem
- Artaxerxes
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards
- house of God, Yahweh's house

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:8-9

UDB:

8 I became very angry. I went to that room and I threw out everything that belonged to Tobiah. **9** Then I commanded that they perform a ritual cleansing of that room to make it pure again. And I also ordered that all the equipment used in the temple and all the grain offerings and incense should be put back in that room, where they belonged.

ULB:

8 I was very angry and I threw all Tobiah's household articles out of the storeroom. **9** I ordered that they purify the storerooms, and I put back in them the articles of the house of God, the grain offerings, and the incense.

translationNotes

translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- household, households
- pure, purify, purification
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- grain offering, grain offerings
- incense, incenses

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:10-11

UDB:

10 I also found out that the temple musicians and other Levites had left Jerusalem and returned to their fields, because the people of Israel had not been bringing into the storerooms the food they needed. **11** So I rebuked the officials, saying to them, "Why have you not taken care of the services to be held in the temple? So I got them together and put them back at their stations.

ULB:

10 I learned that the Levites' portions had not been given to them, and they had run away, each to his own field, the Levites and the singers who did the work. **11** So I confronted the officials and said, "Why is the house of God neglected?" I gathered them together and stationed them at their posts.

translationNotes

the Levites' portions had not been given to them

The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. This can also be translated in active form. AT: "the people had not been bringing into the storerooms their tithes and offerings of food for the temple priests" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

they had run away, each to his own field, the Levites and the singers who did the work

"the Levites and the singers who did the work had left the temple, each one going to his own field"

Why is the house of God neglected?

Nehemiah uses a rhetorical question to challenge or even ridicule the officials who had not done their work. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You have neglected the house of God!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- works, deeds, work, acts
- house of God, Yahweh's house

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:12-14

UDB:

12 Then all the people of Judah again started to bring to the temple storerooms their tithes of grain, wine, and olive oil. **13** I appointed these men to be in charge of the storerooms. Shelemiah the priest, Zadok, an expert in the Jewish laws, and Pedaiah, a descendant of Levi. I appointed Hanan son of Zaccur and grandson of Mattaniah to assist them. I knew that I could trust those men to distribute the offerings fairly to their fellow workers.

14 My God, do not forget all these good deeds that I have done for your temple and for the work that is done there!

ULB:

12 Then all Judah brought in the tithe of the grain, the new wine, and the oil to the storerooms. **13** I appointed as treasurers over the storehouses Shelemiah the priest and Zadok the scribe, and from the Levites, Pedaiah. Next to them was Hanan son of Zaccur son of Mattaniah, for they were counted as trustworthy. Their duties were to distribute the supplies to their associates. **14** Call me to mind, my God, concerning this, and do not wipe out the good deeds that I have done for the house of my God and its services.

translationNotes

all Judah

The name of the land is a metonym for the people of the land. This is probably a generalization. AT: "all the people who lived in Judah" (See: Metonymy and Hyperbole and Generalization)

Shelemiah … Zadok … Pedaiah … Hanan … Zaccur … Mattaniah

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

they were counted as trustworthy

This can be translated in active form. The abstract noun "trustworthy" can be translated as a verb. AT: "I knew that I could trust them" (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

Call me to mind, my God, concerning this

"My God, remember me concerning this"

translationWords

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Zadok
- scribe, scribes
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- son, sons
- trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- God
- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- house of God, Yahweh's house

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:15

UDB:

15 During that time, I saw some people in Judea who were working on the Sabbath day. Some were pressing grapes to make wine. Others were putting grain, bags of wine, baskets of grapes, figs, and many other things on their donkeys and taking them into Jerusalem. I warned them not to sell things to the people of Judea on Sabbath days.

ULB:

15 In those days I saw in Judah people treading winepresses on the Sabbath and bringing in heaps of grain and loading them on donkeys, and also wine, grapes, figs, and all kinds of heavy loads, which they brought into Jerusalem on the Sabbath day. I protested that they were selling food on that day.

translationNotes

treading winepresses

The word "winepresses" is a metonym for the grapes that were in the winepresses. The people were walking on grapes to get the juice out of them to make wine. AT: "walking on grapes in winepresses" (See: Metonymy)

treading

walking on something to crush or press it

translationWords

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- winepress
- Sabbath
- grain, grains, grainfields
- donkey, mule
- grape, grapes, grapevine
- fig, figs
- Jerusalem

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes

- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:16-18

UDB:

16 I also saw some people from Tyre who were living there in Jerusalem who were bringing fish and other things into Jerusalem to sell to the people of Judea on the Sabbath day. **17** So I rebuked the Jewish leaders and told them, "This is a very evil thing that you are doing! You are making the Sabbath days into something God never wanted it to be. **18** Your ancestors did things like this, so God punished them. He allowed this city to be destroyed because of their sin! And now by breaking the laws for the Sabbath day, you are going to cause God to be angry with us, and he will punish us even more!"

ULB:

16 Men from Tyre living in Jerusalem brought in fish and all kinds of goods, and they sold them on the Sabbath to the people of Judah and in the city! **17** Then I confronted the leaders of Judah, "What is this evil thing you are doing, profaning the Sabbath day? **18** Did not your fathers do this? Did not our God bring all this evil on us and on this city? Now you are bringing more wrath on Israel by profaning the Sabbath."

translationNotes

Tyre

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

What is this evil thing you are doing, profaning the Sabbath day?

Nehemiah is using a rhetorical question to scold the leaders of Judah. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "You are doing an evil thing by profaning the Sabbath day." or "God will punish you for doing this evil thing, for profaning the Sabbath day." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Did not your fathers do this? Did not our God bring all this evil on us and on this city?

Nehemiah is using these rhetorical questions to scold the leaders of Judah. These questions can be combined and translated as a statement. AT: "You know that your fathers did this, and that is why God brought all this evil on us and on this city." (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Jerusalem
- Sabbath

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- profane, profaned, profaning
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- God
- wrath, fury
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:19-20

UDB:

19 When it became dark at the gates of Jerusalem, I put some of my men there, so they would make sure that no one could bring any goods into the city to sell on that day. **20** The merchants and sellers of all kinds of goods and merchandise camped outside Jerusalem a few times on Friday evening when the Sabbath begins, hoping to sell something the next day.

ULB:

19 As soon as it became dark at the gates of Jerusalem before the Sabbath, I commanded that the doors be shut and that they should not be opened until after the Sabbath. I stationed some of my servants at the gates so no load could be brought in on the Sabbath day. **20** The merchants and sellers of all kinds of wares camped outside Jerusalem once or twice.

translationNotes

As soon as it became dark ... before the Sabbath

"When the sun went down ... and it was time for the Sabbath to begin"

that the doors be shut and that they should not be opened until

This can be translated in active form. AT: "that the guards shut the doors and not open them until" (See: Active or Passive)

no load could be brought in

This can be translated in active form. AT: "no one could bring in things they wanted to sell" (See: Active or Passive)

sellers of all kinds of wares

"people who had brought many different things they wanted to sell"

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- Jerusalem
- Sabbath
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:21-22

UDB:

21 I warned them, "It is useless for you to stay here outside the walls on Friday night! If you do this again, I will take you and remove you myself!" So after that, they did not come on Sabbath days. **22** I also commanded the descendants of Levi to perform the ritual to purify themselves and to take up their stations to guard the City Gates, to make sure that the Sabbath was kept holy by not allowing merchants to enter it on that holy day.

My God, do not forget what I have done for you! And be kind to me, as kind as your love is for me.

ULB:

21 But I warned them, "Why do you camp outside the wall? If you do so again, I will lay hands on you!" From that time on they did not come on the Sabbath. **22** Then I commanded the Levites to purify themselves, and come and guard the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath day.

Call me to mind for this also, my God, and have mercy on me because of the covenant loyalty you have toward me.

translationNotes

Why do you camp outside the wall?

Nehemiah uses a rhetorical question to rebuke merchants and to emphasize his command. This question can be translated as a statement. The full meaning of this statement can also be made explicit. AT: "You are camping outside the wall against what I commanded." (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I will lay hands on you!

The word "hands" is a metonym for forceful action. AT: "I will send you away by force!" or "I will remove you by force!" (See: Metonymy)

Call me to mind for this also, my God

"My God, remember me concerning this also." See how you translated a similar phrase in Nehemiah 13:14.

translationWords

- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

- Sabbath
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- pure, purify, purification
- sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification
- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- God
- mercy, merciful
- covenant, covenants, new covenant

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:23-24

UDB:

23 During that time, I also found out that many of the Jewish men had married women from Ashdod, Ammon, and Moab. **24** Half of their children spoke the language that people in Ashdod speak or some other language, and they did not know how to speak the language of Judah, only the language of the people where they lived.

ULB:

23 In those days I also saw Jews that had married women of Ashdod, Ammon, and Moab. **24** Half of their children spoke the language of Ashdod. None of them could speak the language of Judah, but only the language of one of the other peoples.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

These verses introduce the action that follows.

Jews that had married women of Ashdod, Ammon, and Moab

"Jews that had married foreign women." God had forbidden intermarriage. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Ashdod

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ammon ... Moab

These are the names of nations. (See: How to Translate Names)

Half of their children

"As a result, half of their children"

translationWords

- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- Ashdod, Azotus
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- children, child
- Judah, kingdom of Judah

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ So I rebuked those men, and I asked God to curse them, and I struck some of them with my fists, and some of them I pulled out their hair! Then I forced them to make a solemn promise, knowing that God was listening, that they would never again marry foreigners and never allow their children to marry foreigners. ²⁶ I said to them, "Solomon, the king of Israel, sinned as a result of marrying foreign women. He was greater than any of the kings of other nations. God loved him and set him as the king over all the people of Israel. But his foreign wives caused even him to sin. ²⁷ Do you think that we should do what you have done, you who married foreign wives, and do what we know is wrong, and commit a great sin against our God by marrying foreign women who worship idols?"

ULB:

²⁵ I confronted them, and I cursed them, and I hit some of them and pulled out their hair. I made them swear by God, saying, "You shall not give your daughters to their sons, or take their daughters for your sons, or for yourselves. ²⁶ Did not Solomon king of Israel sin on account of these women? Among many nations there was no king like him, and he was loved by his God, and God made him king over all Israel. Nevertheless, his foreign wives caused him to sin. ²⁷ Should we then listen to you and do all this great evil, and act treacherously against our God by marrying foreign women?"

translationNotes

I confronted them

"I spoke directly to them about what they had done"

I hit some of them

Nehemiah hit some of them with his hands.

I made them swear by God

"I made them say a promise before God"

Did not Solomon king of Israel sin on account of these women?

Nehemiah uses a rhetorical question to scold the men. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "You know that Solomon king of Israel sinned on account of these women." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Should we then listen to you and do all this great evil, and act treacherously against our God by marrying foreign women?

Nehemiah uses a rhetorical question to scold the men. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "We will not listen to you or do this great evil or act treacherously against our God by marrying foreign women." (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- God
- son, sons
- Solomon
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- nation, nations
- love, loves, loving, loved
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:28-29

UDB:

²⁸ One of the sons of Joiada, the son of Eliashib the leader of all the priests, married the daughter of Sanballat. So I ran Joiada's son out of Jerusalem.

²⁹ My God, remember those who brought shame to the priesthood, and they broke the covenant of the priesthood and of the Levites by what they have done!

ULB:

²⁸ One of the sons of Joiada son of Eliashib the high priest was son-in-law to Sanballat the Horonite. Therefore I caused him to flee from my presence.

²⁹ Call them to mind, my God, because they have defiled the priesthood, and the covenant of the priesthood and the Levites.

translationNotes

Joiada … Eliashib … Sanballat

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Horonite

This refers to a person from the city of Beth Horon. (See: How to Translate Names)

I caused him to flee from my presence

"I chased him away" or "I made him leave Jerusalem"

Call them to mind

"Think about them" or "Remember what they have done." See how you translated a similar phrase in Nehemiah 13:14.

they have defiled the priesthood, and the covenant of the priesthood and the Levites

Causing the priesthood to be dishonored and breaking the covenant is spoken of as if they made the priesthood and covenant physically unclean. AT: "they have dishonored the priesthood and broken the covenant you made with the priests and Levites" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- son, sons
- high priest
- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- God
- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- priest, priests, priesthood
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

Nehemiah 13:30-31

UDB:

30 I took away everything from them that was from other nations and religions, I also established regulations for the priests and descendants of Levi, so they would know what work each of them should do. **31** I made sure that there was wood to be burned on the altar at the set times and days. I also arranged for the people to bring into the storerooms the first portion of the harvest.

My God, do not forget that I have done all these things, and bless me for doing them.

ULB:

30 Thus I cleansed them from everything foreign, and established the duties of the priests and the Levites, each to his own task. **31** I provided for the wood offering at the appointed times and for the firstfruits.

Call me to mind, my God, for good.

translationNotes

Thus I cleansed them

"In this way I purified them"

established the duties of the priests and the Levites

"told the priests and Levites what they were to do"

I provided for the wood offering

"I arranged for a supply of wood for the wood offerings"

for the firstfruits

"for the offering of firstfruits at harvest time"

Call me to mind, my God, for good

"Think about all I have done, my God, and bless me because of the good things I have done." See how you translated a similar phrase in Nehemiah 13:14.

translationWords

- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- firstfruits
- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- God
- good, goodness

Links:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13 translationQuestions

translationQuestions

Nehemiah 1

Who wrote the book of Nehemiah?

Nehemiah the son of Hacaliah wrote the book of Nehemiah. [1:1]

When did Nehemiah ask Hanani and some people from Judah about the Jews who had escaped, the remnant of the Jews who were there, and about Jerusalem?

He asked them in the month Kislev, in the twentieth year. [1:1]

When did Nehemiah ask Hanani and some people from Judah about the Jews who had escaped, the remnant of the Jews who were there, and about Jerusalem?

He asked them in the month Kislev, in the twentieth year. [1:2]

What did Hanani and some people from Judah reply?

They replied that those who remained in the province were in great trouble and disgrace because Jerusalem's wall and gates were broken and burnt. [1:3]

What did Nehemiah do when he heard about the condition of Jerusalem?

He sat down and wept, and for days he continued grieving and fasting and praying. [1:4]

What did Nehemiah request while praying before the God of heaven?

He requested that Yahweh would listen to his prayer; that Yahweh would call to mind the word he commanded Moses, promising to gather the scattered Israelites if they returned to him and followed and did his commandments, and that Yahweh would give success and grant mercy to him. [1:4]

What did Nehemiah confess while praying before the God of heaven?

Nehemiah confessed the sins of the people of Israel and his own sins and the sins of his family. Nehemiah said they had acted very wickedly against Yahweh and had not kept the commandments, the laws, and the decrees Yahweh commanded Moses. [1:6]

What did Nehemiah confess while praying before the God of heaven?

Nehemiah confessed the sins of the people of Israel and his own sins and the sins of his family. Nehemiah said they had acted very wickedly against Yahweh and had not kept the commandments, the laws, and the decrees Yahweh commanded Moses. [1:7]

What did Nehemiah request while praying before the God of heaven?

He requested that Yahweh would listen to his prayer; that Yahweh would call to mind the word he commanded Moses, promising to gather the scattered Israelites if they returned to him and followed and did his commandments, and that Yahweh would give success and grant mercy to him. [1:8]

What did Nehemiah request while praying before the God of heaven?

He requested that Yahweh would listen to his prayer; that Yahweh would call to mind the word he commanded Moses, promising to gather the scattered Israelites if they returned to him and followed and did his commandments, and that Yahweh would give success and grant mercy to him. [1:9]

What did Nehemiah request while praying before the God of heaven?

He requested that Yahweh would listen to his prayer; that Yahweh would call to mind the word he commanded Moses, promising to gather the scattered Israelites if they returned to him and followed and did his commandments, and that Yahweh would give success and grant mercy to him. [1:10]

What did Nehemiah request while praying before the God of heaven?

He requested that Yahweh would listen to his prayer; that Yahweh would call to mind the word he commanded Moses, promising to gather the scattered Israelites if they returned to him and followed and did his commandments, and that Yahweh would give success and grant mercy to him. [1:11]

To whom did Nehemiah serve as cupbearer?

Nehemiah served as cupbearer to the king. [1:11]

Nehemiah 2

At what date did Nehemiah, when he was sad, give wine to the king?

He gave it to king in the month of Nisan, in the twentieth year of Artaxerxes. [2:1]

Why was Nehemiah sad?

He was sad because the city was in ruins and its gates destroyed. [2:3]

When the king asked what Nehemiah wanted him to do, what did Nehemiah do?

Nehemiah prayed to the God of heaven. [2:4]

What did Nehemiah want the king to give him permission to do?

Nehemiah wanted permission from the king to go to Judah to rebuild the city. [2:4]

What did Nehemiah want the king to give him permission to do?

Nehemiah wanted permission from the king to go to Judah to rebuild the city. [2:5]

When the king sent Nehemiah with officers of the army and horsemen, why were Sanballat and Tobiah displeased?

They were displeased that someone had come who was seeking to help the people of Israel. [2:9]

When the king sent Nehemiah with officers of the army and horsemen, why were Sanballat and Tobiah displeased?

They were displeased that someone had come who was seeking to help the people of Israel. [2:10]

When Nehemiah arose in the night, who did he tell what God had put into his heart to do for Jerusalem?

Nehemiah had not told anyone what his God had put into his heart to do for Jerusalem. [2:12]

When Nehemiah told the rulers, the Jews, the priests, the nobles, the rest who did the work that the good hand of his God was on him and about the words the king had spoken to him, what did they say and do?

They said that they would rise and build, and they strengthened their hands for the good work. [2:17]

When Nehemiah told the rulers, the Jews, the priests, the nobles, the rest who did the work that the good hand of his God was on him and about the words the king had spoken to him, what did they say and do?

They said that they would rise and build, and they strengthened their hands for the good work. [2:18]

How did Nehemiah respond to Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem when they heard about the work, and mocked and ridiculed the workers?

Nehemiah responded by saying that God would give them success, that they were God's servants, and that Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem had no share, no right, and no historic claim in Jerusalem. [2:19]

How did Nehemiah respond to Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem when they heard about the work, and mocked and ridiculed the workers?

Nehemiah responded by saying that God would give them success, that they were God's servants, and that Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem had no share, no right, and no historic claim in Jerusalem. [2:20]

Nehemiah 3

Who built and consecrated the Sheep Gate?

Eliashib with his brother priests built the Sheep Gate. [3:1]

Who built the Fish Gate?

The sons of Hassenaah built the Fish Gate. [3:3]

Whose leaders refused to do the work ordered by their supervisors?

The leaders of the Tekoites refused to do the work. [3:5]

Who repaired the Old Gate?

Joiada and Meshullam repaired the Old Gate. [3:6]

Who repaired Jerusalem as far as the Broad Wall?

Uzziel and Hananiah repaired that portion of Jerusalem. [3:8]

Who repaired another section along with the Tower of Ovens?

Malchijah son of Harim and Hasshub repaired another section and the Tower of Ovens. [3:11]

Who helped Shallum repair the walls?

His daughters helped him. [3:12]

Who repaired the Valley Gate as far as the Dung Gate?

Hanun and the inhabitants of Zanoah repaired from the Valley Gate to the Dung Gate. [3:13]

Who repaired the Dung Gate?

Malchijah son of Rechab repaired the Dung Gate. [3:14]

Who repaired the Fountain Gate and the wall of the Pool of Siloam?

Shallun repaired the Fountain Gate and the wall of the Pool of Siloam. [3:15]

Who repaired from the place across from the tombs of David to the house of the mighty men?

Nehemiah, the son of Azbuk, repaired that section. [3:16]

Who energetically repaired from the buttress to the door of the house of Elisahib the high priest?

Baruch energetically repaired it. [3:20]

Which section of the wall did Benjamin and Hasshub repair?

They repaired the section opposite their own house. [3:23]

Who did the repairs on the section above the Horse Gate?

The priests repaired that section, each opposite his own house. [3:28]

Who repaired the wall between the upper changes of the corner and the Sheep Gate?

The goldsmiths and the merchants repaired that section. [3:32]

Nehemiah 4

Who mocked the Jews when they heard the Jews were building the wall?

Sanballat and Tobiah mocked the Jews. [4:1]

Who mocked the Jews when they heard the Jews were building the wall?

Sanballat and Tobiah mocked the Jews. [4:2]

Who mocked the Jews when they heard the Jews were building the wall?

Sanballat and Tobiah mocked the Jews. [4:3]

Why did Nehemiah ask God not to cover over the iniquity of Sanballat and Tobiah?

Nehemiah asked God not to cover their iniquity because they despised the Jews and provoked the builders to anger. [4:4]

Why did Nehemiah ask God not to cover over the iniquity of Sanballat and Tobiah?

Nehemiah asked God not to cover their iniquity because they despised the Jews and provoked the builders to anger. [4:5]

Why did Nehemiah ask God not to cover over the iniquity of Sanballat and Tobiah?

Nehemiah asked God not to cover their iniquity because they despised the Jews and provoked the builders to anger. [4:6]

When Sanballat, Tobiah, the Arabians, the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites came to fight against Jerusalem, what did the builders and people do?

They prayed to their God and set a guard as protection. [4:7]

When Sanballat, Tobiah, the Arabians, the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites came to fight against Jerusalem, what did the builders and people do?

They prayed to their God and set a guard as protection. [4:8]

When Sanballat, Tobiah, the Arabians, the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites came to fight against Jerusalem, what did the builders and people do?

They prayed to their God and set a guard as protection. [4:9]

What did Nehemiah do after the Jews warned him of the schemes being made against them?

After the Nehemiah learned of the schemes against them, he positioned people in the lowest parts of the wall in the exposed areas. He positioned each family with their weapons. Nehemiah told the people to not be afraid of their enemies, remember the great and awesome Lord, and to fight for their families and homes. [4:12]

What did Nehemiah do after the Jews warned him of the schemes being made against them?

After the Nehemiah learned of the schemes against them, he positioned people in the lowest parts of the wall in the exposed areas. He positioned each family with their weapons. Nehemiah told the people to not be afraid of their enemies, remember the great and awesome Lord, and to fight for their families and homes. [4:13]

What did Nehemiah do after the Jews warned him of the schemes being made against them?

After the Nehemiah learned of the schemes against them, he positioned people in the lowest parts of the wall in the exposed areas. He positioned each family with their weapons. Nehemiah told the people to not be afraid of their enemies, remember the great and awesome Lord, and to fight for their families and homes. [4:14]

Why did the plans of the enemies become known to the workers?

The plans became known because God had frustrated their plans. [4:15]

What did Nehemiah have his servants do?

Nehemiah had half his servants work on rebuilding the wall and he had the other half held their weapons and wore armor. [4:16]

Why did Nehemiah tell the people that they must rush to the place where they heard the trumpet sound and assemble there?

Nehemiah told the people that because the workers were separated on the wall, far from one another. [4:19]

Why did Nehemiah tell the people that they must rush to the place where they heard the trumpet sound and assemble there?

Nehemiah told the people that because the workers were separated on the wall, far from one another. [4:20]

Why did the people not go to their homes to sleep or change their clothes?

They did not go to their homes or change their clothes so that they could spend the night in the middle of Jerusalem, being a guard during the night and a worker in the day. [4:21]

Why did the people not go to their homes to sleep or change their clothes?

They did not go to their homes or change their clothes so that they could spend the night in the middle of Jerusalem, being a guard during the night and a worker in the day. [4:22]

Why did the people not go to their homes to sleep or change their clothes?

They did not go to their homes or change their clothes so that they could spend the night in the middle of Jerusalem, being a guard during the night and a worker in the day. [4:23]

Nehemiah 5

Why did the men and women raise a great outcry against their fellow Jews?

They raised an outcry because they had to mortgage their property and sell their children for food, yet the nobles and officials were exacting interest from them. [5:1]

Why did the men and women raise a great outcry against their fellow Jews?

They raised an outcry because they had to mortgage their property and sell their children for food, yet the nobles and officials were exacting interest from them. [5:2]

Why did the men and women raise a great outcry against their fellow Jews?

They raised an outcry because they had to mortgage their property and sell their children for food, yet the nobles and officials were exacting interest from them. [5:3]

Why did the men and women raise a great outcry against their fellow Jews?

They raised an outcry because they had to mortgage their property and sell their children for food, yet the nobles and officials were exacting interest from them. [5:4]

Why did the men and women raise a great outcry against their fellow Jews?

They raised an outcry because they had to mortgage their property and sell their children for food, yet the nobles and officials were exacting interest from them. [5:5]

Why did the men and women raise a great outcry against their fellow Jews?

They raised an outcry because they had to mortgage their property and sell their children for food, yet the nobles and officials were exacting interest from them. [5:7]

Although the men and women were buying back from slavery their Jewish brothers who had been sold to the nations, what were the nobles and officials doing?

They were selling their brothers and sisters, that they might be sold back to the other Jewish men and women. [5:8]

Why did Nehemiah command the nobles, officials, and priests to return the things they exacted from the people?

He commanded them to do that because what they were doing was not good, and they were causing the nations that were their enemies to taunt them. [5:9]

Why did Nehemiah command the nobles, officials, and priests to return the things they exacted from the people?

He commanded them to do that because what they were doing was not good, and they were causing the nations that were their enemies to taunt them. [5:10]

Why did Nehemiah command the nobles, officials, and priests to return the things they exacted from the people?

He commanded them to do that because what they were doing was not good, and they were causing the nations that were their enemies to taunt them. [5:11]

How did the nobles, officials, and priests respond to Nehemiah's command?

They said they would do as he commanded, said "Amen," and praised Yahweh. [5:12]

How did the nobles, officials, and priests respond to Nehemiah's command?

They said they would do as he commanded, said "Amen," and praised Yahweh. [5:13]

Why did neither Nehemiah nor his brothers take the food provided for the governor during the 12 years he was Judah's governor?

He did not do so because the former governors had laid heavy burdens on the people, but he feared God. [5:14]

Why did neither Nehemiah nor his brothers take the food provided for the governor during the 12 years he was Judah's governor?

He did not do so because the former governors had laid heavy burdens on the people, but he feared God. [5:15]

Who ate at Nehemiah's table?

Those who ate at Nehemiah's table were the Jews and the officials, 150 men, and also those who came to Nehemiah from among the nations who were around them. [5:17]

Why did Nehemiah ask God to call him to mind for good?

He asked God to do this because of all that Nehemiah had done for the people. [5:19]

Nehemiah 6

When Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem asked Nehemiah to meet with them in the plain of Ono, what was their intention?

Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem intended to harm Nehemiah? [6:2]

How did Nehemiah respond to the requests of their enemies?

Nehemiah sent messengers to them saying, "I am doing a great work and I cannot come down. Why should the work stop while I leave it and come down to you?" [6:3]

What did Sanballat say in his fifth message?

He said that all the nations had reported that Nehemiah and the Jews were planning to rebel, and the king would certainly hear these reports. [6:5]

How did Nehemiah respond to Sanballat's fifth message?

Nehemiah responded by saying Sanballat had invented the reports in his heart. [6:5]

What did Sanballat say in his fifth message?

He said that all the nations had reported that Nehemiah and the Jews were planning to rebel, and the king would certainly hear these reports. [6:6]

How did Nehemiah respond to Sanballat's fifth message?

Nehemiah responded by saying Sanballat had invented the reports in his heart. [6:8]

What did Nehemiah pray when he realized that Sanballat and Jews' enemies were trying to make the work stop and the Jews afraid?

Nehemiah prayed that God would strengthen his hands. [6:8]

What did Nehemiah pray when he realized that Sanballat and Jews' enemies were trying to make the work stop and the Jews afraid?

Nehemiah prayed that God would strengthen his hands. [6:9]

Why did Nehemiah refuse to meet Shemaiah, the son of Delaiah, the son of Mehetabel, in the temple?

Nehemiah refused because he thought a man like himself should not run away to save his own life. [6:10]

Why did Nehemiah refuse to meet Shemaiah, the son of Delaiah, the son of Mehetabel, in the temple?

Nehemiah refused because he thought a man like himself should not run away to save his own life. [6:11]

What would have happened if Nehemiah had gone into the temple?

He would have sinned, and then Tobiah and Sanballat would have given Nehemiah a bad name in order to humiliate him. [6:13]

What did Nehemiah pray the second time?

He prayed God would call to mind Tobiah, Sanballat, the prophetess Noadiah, and the rest of the prophets who tried to make him afraid. [6:14]

Why did Nehemiah's enemies become afraid and fall in their own esteem when the wall was finished?

They became afraid because they knew the work was done with the help of the Jews' God. [6:15]

Why did Nehemiah's enemies become afraid and fall in their own esteem when the wall was finished?

They became afraid because they knew the work was done with the help of the Jews' God. [6:16]

Nehemiah 7

When did Nehemiah give his brother Hanani charge over Jerusalem?

Nehemiah gave Hanani charge after he had finished the wall, set up the doors, and appointed the gatekeepers, singers, and Levites. [7:1]

When did Nehemiah give his brother Hanani charge over Jerusalem?

Nehemiah gave Hanani charge after he had finished the wall, set up the doors, and appointed the gatekeepers, singers, and Levites. [7:2]

Why did Nehemiah appoint Hanani?

Nehemiah did so because Hanani was a faithful man and feared God more than many. [7:2]

When were the gates of Jerusalem supposed to be open?

The gates were supposed to be open when the sun was hot. [7:3]

Although the city was wide and large, were there people and houses within it?

There were few people within the city, and no houses. [7:4]

What did God put into Nehemiah's heart to do?

God put into Nehemiah's heart to enroll the nobles, the officials, and the people by their families. [7:5]

What was done concerning the priests who could not find their genealogical records and what did the governor restrict them from doing?

The priests who could not find their genealogical records were excluded from the priesthood and the governor said they should not be allowed to eat the priest's share of food from the sacrifices. [7:64]

What was done concerning the priests who could not find their genealogical records and what did the governor restrict them from doing?

The priests who could not find their genealogical records were excluded from the priesthood and the governor said they should not be allowed to eat the priest's share of food from the sacrifices. [7:65]

When would the priests who could not prove their genealogy be included in the priesthood again?

They would be included when there rose up a priest with Urim and Thummim. [7:65]

How many people were counted in the enrollment of the assembly?

The whole assembly was counted to be 42,360 people. [7:66]

Who gave gifts for the work?

Some of the heads of ancestors' families gave gifts, as did the rest of the people. [7:70]

Who gave gifts for the work?

Some of the heads of ancestors' families gave gifts, as did the rest of the people. [7:71]

Who gave gifts for the work?

Some of the heads of ancestors' families gave gifts, as did the rest of the people. [7:72]

When did the priests, Levites, gatekeepers, singers, temple servants, and people live in their cities?

They lived in their cities by the seventh month. [7:73]

Nehemiah 8

Why did the people gather together from the first day of the seventh month throughout the end of the month?

The people gathered together to listen to the book of the law. [8:1]

Why did the people gather together from the first day of the seventh month throughout the end of the month?

The people gathered together to listen to the book of the law. [8:2]

Who gathered together to listen to the book of the law?

Men and women, and any who could understand, gathered to listen to it. [8:2]

Why did the people gather together from the first day of the seventh month throughout the end of the month?

The people gathered together to listen to the book of the law. [8:3]

Who gathered together to listen to the book of the law?

Men and women, and any who could understand, gathered to listen to it. [8:3]

Who read in the book of the law of God?

Ezra, others beside him, and the Levites read in it. [8:5]

Who read in the book of the law of God?

Ezra, others beside him, and the Levites read in it. [8:7]

Why did Ezra, the others beside him, and the Levites have to interpret and give the meaning of the book?

They had to interpret and give the meaning so the people could understand the reading. [8:7]

Who read in the book of the law of God?

Ezra, others beside him, and the Levites read in it. [8:8]

Why did Ezra, the others beside him, and the Levites have to interpret and give the meaning of the book?

They had to interpret and give the meaning so the people could understand the reading. [8:8]

Why were all of the people commanded by Nehemiah, Ezra, and the Levites to celebrate with great joy and not to mourn or weep?

They were commanded to celebrate rather than mourn or weep because the day was holy to Yahweh their God and that the Joy of Yahweh was their strength. [8:9]

Why were all of the people commanded by Nehemiah, Ezra, and the Levites to celebrate with great joy and not to mourn or weep?

They were commanded to celebrate rather than mourn or weep because the day was holy to Yahweh their God and that the Joy of Yahweh was their strength. [8:10]

What insight did the leaders of the ancestors' families, the priests, and the Levites gain when they came together to learn from Ezra?

They learned that Yahweh had commanded the people of Israel to live in tents during the festival of the seventh month. [8:13]

What insight did the leaders of the ancestors' families, the priests, and the Levites gain when they came together to learn from Ezra?

They learned that Yahweh had commanded the people of Israel to live in tents during the festival of the seventh month. [8:14]

Where did the people make their tents to celebrate the festival?

The people made their tents on their own roofs, in their courtyards, in the courts of the house of God, in the open place by the water Gate, and in the square at the Gate of Ephraim. [8:16]

Where did the people make their tents to celebrate the festival?

The people made their tents on their own roofs, in their courtyards, in the courts of the house of God, in the open place by the water Gate, and in the square at the Gate of Ephraim. [8:17]

When was the last time the people of Israel had obeyed the command of Yahweh to celebrate the festival?

The last time the festival had been celebrated was in the days of Joshua the son of Nun. [8:17]

Why did the people gather together from the first day of the seventh month throughout the end of the month?

The people gathered together to listen to the book of the law. [8:18]

Nehemiah 9

In general, what were the people of Israel doing as they gathered together on the twenty-fourth day of the same month?

The people of Israel were fasting, wearing sackcloth, and they put dust on their heads. The Israelites separated themselves from all the foreigners, and they stood and confessed their own sins and the sins of their ancestors. [9:1]

What did the people say about Yahweh?

The people said he was Yahweh alone, and he had made heaven, the earth, the seas, and all that was in them, and gave them life. [9:5]

What else did the people say of Yahweh concerning Abram?

The people said that Yahweh had chosen Abram, changed his name to Abraham, found his heart faithful, and made the covenant with him to give his descendants the land. [9:7]

How did the people say that Yahweh kept his promise to them?

The people told how Yahweh brought their forefathers out of Egypt, showed signs and wonders against Pharaoh and his people, and saved their forefathers at the Red Sea. [9:9]

How did the people say that Yahweh kept his promise to them?

The people told how Yahweh brought their forefathers out of Egypt, showed signs and wonders against Pharaoh and his people, and saved their forefathers at the Red Sea. [9:10]

What did the people say that Yahweh did for the Israelites at the Red Sea?

Yahweh parted the sea so they could pass through on dry ground, and then he brought the sea back onto those that were pursuing them. [9:11]

What other ways did they say Yahweh took care of the Israelites?

Yahweh led them by a pillar of cloud during the day, a pillar of fire during the night, and at Mount Sinai, he gave them his commandments. [9:12]

What other ways did they say Yahweh took care of the Israelites?

Yahweh led them by a pillar of cloud during the day, a pillar of fire during the night, and at Mount Sinai, he gave them his commandments. [9:13]

What else did the people say Yahweh provided to their forefathers?

Yahweh made his holy Sabbath known to them, gave them bread from heaven, water from a rock, and told them to possess the land he had promised them. [9:14]

What else did the people say Yahweh provided to their forefathers?

Yahweh made his holy Sabbath known to them, gave them bread from heaven, water from a rock, and told them to possess the land he had promised them. [9:15]

How did the Israelites and their ancestors act toward God?

The Israelites were disrespectful, stubborn, refused to listen, rebelled, and appointed a leader to return them to their slavery. [9:16]

Why did God not abandon the Israelites when they were disrespectful, stubborn, rebellious, and disobedient?

God did not abandon the Israelites because he is a God who is full of forgiveness, gracious and compassionate, slow to anger, and abounding in steadfast love. [9:16]

How did the Israelites and their ancestors act toward God?

The Israelites were disrespectful, stubborn, refused to listen, rebelled, and appointed a leader to return them to their slavery. [9:17]

Why did God not abandon the Israelites when they were disrespectful, stubborn, rebellious, and disobedient?

God did not abandon the Israelites because he is a God who is full of forgiveness, gracious and compassionate, slow to anger, and abounding in steadfast love. [9:17]

How did the people say God provided for their forefathers for forty years in the wilderness?

Yahweh gave his Spirit to instruct them, food and water; their clothes did not wear out, and their feet did not swell. [9:20]

How did the people say God provided for their forefathers for forty years in the wilderness?

Yahweh gave his Spirit to instruct them, food and water; their clothes did not wear out, and their feet did not swell. [9:21]

What did the people say happened after their forefathers were in the wilderness?

The people said that Yahweh multiplied their families, told them to go in and possess the land he had promised them, and subdued the Canaanites. [9:23]

What did the people say happened after their forefathers were in the wilderness?

The people said that Yahweh multiplied their families, told them to go in and possess the land he had promised them, and subdued the Canaanites. [9:24]

How did the Israelites live after taking possession of the land God had promised them?

The Israelites took the land and all that was there for themselves and delighted in God's goodness. [9:25]

What did the people say Yahweh did to their forefathers and ancestors after they became disobedient and rebelled against him?

Yahweh handed them over to their enemies, who made them suffer. [9:26]

What did the people say Yahweh did to their forefathers and ancestors after they became disobedient and rebelled against him?

Yahweh handed them over to their enemies, who made them suffer. [9:27]

When the Israelites cried out to God, what did God do for them because of his great mercies?

God rescued them from their enemies many times. [9:27]

Why did the rich yield from the Israelite's land go to the kings God had set over them?

The rich yield of the land went to their kings because of the Israelite's sins. [9:37]

Why were the Israelites in great distress?

The Israelites were in great distress because their kings ruled over their bodies and their livestock as the kings pleased. [9:37]

What did the Israelites do because of their great distress?

The Israelites made a firm covenant in writing with Yahweh. [9:38]

Whose names were written on the sealed covenant?

The names of the Israelite's princes, Levites, and priests were written on the sealed covenant." [9:38]

Nehemiah 10

Who pledged themselves to the law of God that was given to Moses?

Those that pledged themselves were the rest of the people that were priests, Levites, gatekeepers, singers, temple servants, and all the others that bound themselves to God's law. [10:28]

Who pledged themselves to the law of God that was given to Moses?

Those that pledged themselves were the rest of the people that were priests, Levites, gatekeepers, singers, temple servants, and all the others that bound themselves to God's law. [10:29]

What promises did they make to God?

They promised not to give their daughters to or let their sons take daughters from the people from whom they had separated; they would not buy any goods on the Sabbath or any holy day, and they would let their fields rest every seventh year. [10:30]

What promises did they make to God?

They promised not to give their daughters to or let their sons take daughters from the people from whom they had separated; they would not buy any goods on the Sabbath or any holy day, and they would let their fields rest every seventh year. [10:31]

What commands did they accept?

They would give money, bread, grain, and provide for all the offerings and feasts each year for the service of the house of God. [10:32]

What commands did they accept?

They would give money, bread, grain, and provide for all the offerings and feasts each year for the service of the house of God. [10:33]

Why did the priests, the Levites, and the people cast lots for the wood offering?

This would select which family would bring the wood into the house of God at selected times each year. [10:34]

What did they promise to bring to the house of Yahweh?

They promised to bring the firstfruits of their harvests, the firstborn of their sons and their animals. [10:35]

What did they promise to bring to the house of Yahweh?

They promised to bring the firstfruits of their harvests, the firstborn of their sons and their animals. [10:36]

Who had to be with the Levites when the Levites received the tithes?

A priest, a descendant of Aaron, had to be with the Levites. [10:38]

Where did the people of Israel and descendants of Levi bring the contributions of the harvest?

They were to bring the contributions to the storerooms where the articles of the sanctuary were kept and the priests that serve, the gatekeepers, and the singers stayed. [10:39]

Nehemiah 11

Who lived in the holy city of Jerusalem?

The leaders of the people lived in Jerusalem, and the rest of the people cast lots to see who the one in ten would be to live there. [11:1]

Where were the remainder of Israel, the priests, and the Levites living?

They were living in all the towns of Judah on their own inherited property. [11:20]

Nehemiah 12

In what book were the descendants of Levi and their leaders of families recorded?

They were recorded in the book of the annals up to the days of Johanan. [12:23]

Why did the people seek out the Levites at the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem?

The people brought the Levites to Jerusalem to celebrate the dedication. [12:27]

What did the priests and Levites do for the celebration?

The priests and Levites purified themselves, and then purified the people, the gates, and the wall. [12:30]

Where did the leaders of Judah go on the day of celebration?

The leaders went up to the top of the wall. [12:31]

What were the two large choirs, that Nehemiah appointed, supposed to do?

The two large choirs were supposed to give thanks. [12:31]

Where did the first choir go?

One choir went to the right on the wall toward the Dung Gate. [12:31]

Who directed the singers?

The singers sang with Jezrahiah as director. [12:42]

Why did they offer great sacrifices that day, and rejoice?

They offered great sacrifices that day, and rejoiced, for God had made them rejoice with great joy. [12:43]

Who was assigned to work the fields near the towns?

The men who were appointed to be in charge of the storerooms were assigned to work the fields near the towns. [12:44]

When did all Israel give the daily portions for the singers and the gatekeepers?

In the days of Zerubbabel and in the days of Nehemiah, all Israel gave the daily portions for the singers and the gatekeepers. [12:47]

Nehemiah 13

Why should an Ammonite and a Moabite not come into the assembly of God, forever?

An Ammonite and a Moabite should not come into the assembly of God, forever, because they had not come to the people of Israel with bread and water, but had hired Balaam to curse Israel. [13:1]

Why should an Ammonite and a Moabite not come into the assembly of God, forever?

An Ammonite and a Moabite should not come into the assembly of God, forever, because they had not come to the people of Israel with bread and water, but had hired Balaam to curse Israel. [13:2]

What did Eliashib prepare for Tobiah?

Eliashib prepared for Tobiah a large storeroom. [13:5]

Where did Nehemiah go in the thirty-second year of Artaxerxes?

In the thirty-second year of Artaxerxes, Nehemiah went to the king. [13:6]

What did Nehemiah do because he was angry?

Because he was angry, Nehemiah threw all the household articles of Tobiah out of the storeroom. [13:8]

Why did the Levites and singers hurry to leave the temple?

Because the portions assigned to give the Levites had not been distributed to them, they hurried to leave the temple, as the singers who did the work also had done. [13:10]

Who was counted as trustworthy?

Shelemiah the priest, Zadok the scribe, Pedaiah, and Hanan were counted as trustworthy. [13:13]

When were people in Judah treading winepresses?

People in Judah were treading winepresses on the Sabbath. [13:15]

What did men from Tyre do on the Sabbath?

Men from Tyre brought in fish and all kinds of goods, and they sold them on the Sabbath to the people of Judah and in the city! [13:16]

How did Nehemiah prevent people from coming into Jerusalem on the Sabbath?

As soon as it became dark, at the gates of Jerusalem before the Sabbath, Nehemiah commanded that the doors be shut and that they should not be opened until after the Sabbath. He stationed some of his servants at the gates so no load could be brought in on the Sabbath day. [13:19]

Who came and guarded the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath day?

The Levites came and guarded the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath day. [13:22]

What did half the children speak?

Half the children spoke the language of Ashdod, but they could not speak the language of Judah, but only the language of one of the other peoples. [13:24]

How did Nehemiah confront the Jews who married women of Ashdod, Ammon, and Moab?

Nehemiah confronted them, and he cursed them, and he hit some of them and pulled out their hair. [13:25]

How did Nehemiah want God to call him to mind?

Nehemiah wanted God to call him to mind for good. [13:31]

translationWords

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:18-19

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:5-7
- Numbers 16:44-46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 12:46-47

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:6-9
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- James 02:21-24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8

adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- Adversary may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a tronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Isaiah 09:11-12
- Job 06:21-23
- Lamentations 04:12-13
- Luke 12:57-59
- Matthew 13:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 6:1-2
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 9:26-27
- Nehemiah 9:28-29

afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Amos 05:12-13
- Colossians 01:24-27
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804,

G4777, G4778, G5003

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:9-10

Ai

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, Jericho)

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Joshua 08:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5857

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:31-34

alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
- Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17-18
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:24-27
- Luke 17:17-19
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3363, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H5361, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:25-27
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

altar, altars

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 23:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:34-36

amen, truly

Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

- When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as "verily" or "truly."
- Another word meaning "truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly" and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
- When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
- The phrase "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."
- (See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19-20
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 8:6-8

Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Facts:

The "people of Ammon" or the "Ammonites" were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term "Ammonitess" refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as "Ammonite woman."
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Genesis 19:36-38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:26-28
- Zephaniah 02:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:9-10
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 13:1-3
- Nehemiah 13:23-24

Amorite, Amorites

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:9-10
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

*15:07 Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon. ***15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them. ***15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**. ***15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8

ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather

Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms "father" and "forefather" are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a "ancestor" or "ancestral father."
- The expression "the father of" can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 07:31-32
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 22:3-5
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Genesis 31:41-42
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:11-12
- Joshua 24:3-4

- Malachi 03:6-7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 9:9-10
- Nehemiah 12:10-11
- Nehemiah 13:16-18

angel, angels, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:22-23

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah,"I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising Godâ€¦
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:5-6

anger, angered, angry

Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."

(See also: wrath)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:13-14
- Matthew 26:6-9
- Psalms 018:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 13:8-9

appoint, appoints, appointed

Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Acts 03:19-20
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 13:48-49
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 6:7
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:16-17

- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 12:31
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

Arabia, Arabian, Arabians

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term "Arabian" is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham's son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Esau, Galatia, Ishmael, Shem, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- Acts 02:8-11
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 02:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 6:1-2

armor, armory

Definition:

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: faith, Holy Spirit, peace, save, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 06:10-11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:21-23
- Nehemiah 04:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2185, H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:15-16

Artaxerxes

Facts:

Artaxerxes was a king who reigned over the Persian empire from about 464 to 424 BC.

- During Artaxerxes' reign, the Israelites from Judah were in exile in Babylon, which was under the control of Persia at that time.
- Artaxerxes allowed Ezra the priest and other Jewish leaders to leave Babylon and go back to Jerusalem to teach the Israelites the Law of God.
- Later during this time, Artaxerxes also allowed his cupbearer Nehemiah to return to Jerusalem to lead the Jews in rebuilding the walls surrounding the city.
- Because Babylon was under the rule of Persia, Artaxerxes was sometimes called the "king of Babylon."
- Note that Artaxerxers is not the same person as Xerxes (Ahasuerus).

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, cupbearer, Ezra, Nehemiah, Persia)

Bible References:

- Ezra 04:7-8
- Ezra 07:1-5
- Nehemiah 02:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H783

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 13:6-7

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: descendant, harp, lute, prophet, psalm, trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 02:7-8
- Psalm 050:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H623

Uses:

- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 12:32-35
- Nehemiah 12:46-47

Ashdod, Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Joppa, Philip, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:1-3
- Acts 08:39-40
- Amos 01:8
- Joshua 15:45-47
- Zechariah 09:5-7

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H795, G108

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 13:23-24

assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
- When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
- The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone." (See: hyperbole)

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14-16
- Acts 07:38-40
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:19-20
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 7:66-67
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:1-3

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17-18
- Micah 07:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

*20:02 So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country. ***20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**. ***20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:32-34

atonement, atone, atones, atoned

Definition:

The terms "atone" and "atonement" refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people's sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ's death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "atone" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "pay for" or "provide payment for" or "cause someone's sins to be forgiven" or "make amends for a crime."
- Ways to translate "atonement" could include "payment" or "sacrifice to pay for sin" or "providing the means of forgiveness."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Numbers 05:8-10
- Numbers 28:19-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3722, H3725, G2643

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:32-33

awe, awesome

Definition:

The term "awe" refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term "awesome" describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were "awesome" or "awe-inspiring."
- Typical human responses showing awe of God's presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: fear, glory)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:19-21
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Hebrews 12:27-29
- Psalm 022:22-23
- Psalms 147:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H366, H1481, H3372, H6206, H7227, G2124

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 9:32-34

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word "Babylon" refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the "king of Babylon" ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called "Chaldea" and the people living there were the "Chaldeans." As a result, the term "Chaldea" was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)
- In the New Testament, the term "Babylon" is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase "Babylon the Great" or "great city of Babylon" refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Matthew 01:9-11
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:6-7
- Nehemiah 13:6-7

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bless, Canaan, curse, donkey, Euphrates River, Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Revelation 02:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G903

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:1-3

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called "Golan" was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:11-14
- Amos 04:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:22

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means "well of the oath." It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech's men for seizing control of one of Abraham's wells.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abimelech, Abraham, Hagar, Ishmael, Jerusalem, oath)

===== Bible References:=====

- 1 Samuel 03:19-21
- 2 Samuel 17:11-12
- Genesis 21:14-16
- Genesis 21:31-32
- Genesis 46:1-4
- Nehemiah 11:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H884

Uses:

- Nehemiah 11:28-30

beg, begged, begging, beggar

Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: plead)

Bible References:

- Luke 16:19-21
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:34-36
- Psalm 045:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

*10:04 God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs. ***29:08** "The king called the servant and said, 'You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me." ***32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, "Please do not send us out of this region!" There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, "Please send us into the pigs instead!" ***32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus. ***35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused." ***44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434, G6075

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11

Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, "son of my right hand."

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:8-9
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

Uses:

- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:7-9
- Nehemiah 11:31-36

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, altar, Jacob, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1-3
- Hosea 10:14-15
- Judges 01:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:31-34
- Nehemiah 11:31-36

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: Caleb, David, Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16-20
- John 07:40-42
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

*17:02 David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**. ***21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**. ***23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**. ***23:06** "The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem**!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H672, H1035, G965

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:23-26

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "blasphemy" refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To "blaspheme" someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as "slander" when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "blaspheme" can be translated as to "say evil things against" or to "dishonor God" or to "slander."
- Ways to translate "blasphemy" could include "speaking wrongly about others" or "slander" or "spreading false rumors."

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:10-11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:8-10
- Mark 14:63-65
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 26:65-66
- Psalms 074:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:18-19
- Nehemiah 9:26-27

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:14-17
- Acts 13:32-34
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 14:19-20
- Isaiah 44:3-4
- James 01:22-25
- Luke 06:20-21
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:5-6
- Romans 04:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

Uses:

- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 11:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:1-3

bow and arrow, bows and arrows

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:14-16
- Habakkuk 03:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 02:3-4
- Psalms 058:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 4:15-16

bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Genesis 44:14-15
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:4-5
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Revelation 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4781, G4794

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 9:3-4

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche)
- The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 27:33-35
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 06:37-38
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:14-15

- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 13:1-3

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Genesis 29:9-10
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Nehemiah 03:1-2
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:21-23
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God" that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Genesis 49:14-15
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Matthew 23:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H92, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4858, H4864, H4942, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G1117, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:10-11
- Nehemiah 5:14-15

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- Mark 12:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:32-33

call, calls, calling, called

Definition:

The terms "call" and "call out" literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- The term "called" is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, "He is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God knows a person's name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know your name and have chosen you."

(See also: pray)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 6:12-14
- Nehemiah 7:61-63
- Nehemiah 9:3-4
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:21-22
- Nehemiah 13:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

camel, camels

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, clean)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:23-25
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H1581, G2574

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:68-69

Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18-19
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Genesis 47:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G2581, G5478

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 9:23-24

captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

Definition:

The terms "captive" and "captivity" refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to "take captive" is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, "carry you away captive" could also be translated as, "force you to live as captives" or "take you away to another country as prisoners."
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to "take captive" every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be "taken captive" by sin, which means he is "controlled by" sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be "held captive" could also be translated by, "not allowed to be free" or "kept in prison" or "forced to live in a foreign country."
- The expression, "led captive" or "taken captive" could be translated as, "captured" or "imprisoned" or "forced to go to a foreign land."
- The term "captives" could also be translated as, "people who were captured" or "enslaved people."
- Depending on the context, "captivity" could also be translated as, "imprisonment" or "exile" or "forced stay in a foreign country."

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5-6
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 43:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:3
- Nehemiah 7:6-7
- Nehemiah 8:16-17

Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as "Ur of the Chaldeans."
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term "Chaldean" came to mean "Babylonian."
- In the book of Daniel, the term "Chaldean" also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:4-5
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term "children" is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
- children of the light
- children of obedience
- children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:27-29
- 3 John 01:1-4
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:23-24
- Nehemiah 13:23-24

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
- The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah, prison, strife)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:15-17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:13-14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H883, H953, H1360, H3653, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:13-14

city of David

Facts:

The term "city of David" is another name for both Jerusalem and Bethlehem.

- Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
- Bethlehem is where David was born.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, Bethlehem, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 2 Samuel 05:6-7
- Isaiah 22:8-9
- Luke 02:4-5
- Nehemiah 03:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, H5892, G1138, G4172

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:14-15
- Nehemiah 12:36-37

clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," or "free from sin."

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."

- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 07:8-10
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Psalms 051:7-9
- Proverbs 20:29-30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Luke 05:12-13
- Acts 08:6-8
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- James 04:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

column, columns, pillar, pillars

Definition:

The term "pillar" usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for "pillar" is "column."

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word "pillar" sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a "carved image" and could be translated as "statue."
- The term "pillar" is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the "pillar of fire" that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the "pillar of salt" that Lot's wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term "pillar" or "column" could be translated as "upright stone support beam" or "supporting stone structure."
- Other uses of "pillar" could be translated as "statue" or "pile" or "mound" or "monument" or "tall mass," depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:12-13

command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 11:7-9
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:19-20
- Nehemiah 13:21-22

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:40-42
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:18-19
- Nehemiah 9:28-29

confess, confessed, confesses, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
- Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16-18
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:3-4

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to "sanctify" or to "make holy," but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word "consecrate" has a meaning that is similar to "purify," especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God's service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "consecrate" could include, "set apart for God's service" or "purify for service to God."
- Also consider how the terms "holy" and "sanctify" are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:1-2

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:54-55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:24-26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H6503, H7339, G833, G933, G2681, G4259

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 13:6-7

covenant, covenants, new covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."

- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:11-13
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 31:43-44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:22-25
- Luke 01:72-75
- Luke 22:19-20
- Acts 07:6-8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:4-6
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 9:38
- Nehemiah 13:21-22
- Nehemiah 13:28-29

cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Definition:

The terms "cow," "bull," "heifer," "ox," and "cattle" all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a "cow," the male is a "bull," and their offspring is a "calf."
- In the Bible, cattle were among the "clean" animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A "heifer" is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is "oxen." Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to "be under a yoke" became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15-16
- Luke 14:4-6
- Hebrews 09:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:18-19

cupbearer, cupbearers

Definition:

In Old Testament times, a "cupbearer" was a king's servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- The literal meaning of this term is "cup bringer" or "someone who brings the cup."
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, captive, Persia, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:3-5
- Nehemiah 01:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8248

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11

curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 03:14-15
- Genesis 03:17-19
- James 03:9-10
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Psalms 109:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, ”You are **cursed**!”
- **02:11** ”Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **04:04** ”I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, ”May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:1-3
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

Darius

Facts:

Darius was the name of several kings of Persia. It is possible that "Darius" was a title rather than a name. * "Darius the Mede" was the king who was tricked into having the prophet Daniel thrown into a lion's den as punishment for worshiping God. * "Darius the Persian" helped facilitate the reconstruction of the temple in Jerusalem during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Persia, Babylon, Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- Ezra 04:4-6
- Haggai 01:1-2
- Nehemiah 12:22-23
- Zechariah 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1867, H1868

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:22-23

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Samuel 05:1-2
- 2 Timothy 02:8-10
- Acts 02:25-26
- Acts 13:21-22
- Luke 01:30-33
- Mark 02:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

*17:02 God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. … **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath. ***17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul. ***17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.

*17:06 **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. ***17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God. ***17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was.

David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:16-17
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:36-37
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 12:46-47

day, days

Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:4-6
- Daniel 10:4-6
- Ezra 06:13-15
- Ezra 06:19-20
- Matthew 09:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

Uses:

- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 9:1-2

decree, decrees, decreed

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: command, declare, law, proclaim)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:12-13
- Esther 01:21-22
- Luke 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word "dedication" refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem's repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term "dedicate" could also be translated as "specially assign a special purpose" or "commit something to be used for a specific use" or "commit someone to do a special task."

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Kings 07:51
- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 02:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:27-28

defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled

Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
- To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: clean, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8-9
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Genesis 49:3-4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:28-29

descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23-25
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

*02:09 "The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel." ***04:09** "I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**." ***05:10** "Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky." ***17:07** "Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!" ***18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. ***21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**. ***48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:8-10
- Nehemiah 7:11-14
- Nehemiah 7:15-18
- Nehemiah 7:19-22

- Nehemiah 7:23-26
- Nehemiah 7:39-42
- Nehemiah 7:43-45
- Nehemiah 7:46-49
- Nehemiah 7:50-52
- Nehemiah 7:53-56
- Nehemiah 7:57-60
- Nehemiah 7:61-63
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:7-9
- Nehemiah 11:17-18
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 12:22-23
- Nehemiah 12:32-35
- Nehemiah 12:46-47

desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:37-38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14-15
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:1-3
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:18-19
- Nehemiah 9:20-21

disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
- A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: authority, evil, sin, obey)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:20-22
- Acts 26:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me."
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:26-27

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:3-4
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15-16
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, H7409, G3678, G3688, G5268

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:68-69
- Nehemiah 13:15

dung, manure

Definition:

The term "dung" refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called "manure."

- These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
- Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
- The expression "be like dung on the face of the earth" could be translated as "be scattered like worthless dung over the land."
- The "Dung Gate" in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also: gate)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- 2 Kings 06:24-26
- Isaiah 25:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H830, H1119, H1557, H1561, H1686, H1828, H6569, H6675, G906, G4657

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:13-14
- Nehemiah 3:13
- Nehemiah 3:14-15
- Nehemiah 12:31

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: spirit, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51-53
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Zechariah 06:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:5-6

Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:9-10
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- Matthew 02:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:9-10
- Nehemiah 9:18-19

Elam, Elamites

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called "Elamites," and they lived in a region that was also called "Elam."
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- Acts 02:8-11
- Ezra 08:4-7
- Isaiah 22:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G1639

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:31-34

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Definition:

The word for "servant" can also mean "slave" and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

(See: Metaphor)

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, serve)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28

Examples from the Bible stories:

*06:01 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. ***08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. ***09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." ***19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." ***29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" ***35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." ***47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. ***50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 2:9-10
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 3:31-32
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 4:21-23
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 5:16-17
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 7:46-49
- Nehemiah 7:57-60
- Nehemiah 7:66-67
- Nehemiah 7:73
- Nehemiah 9:9-10
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:16-17

- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 13:19-20

Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54-55

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 12:38-39

epistle, letter, letters

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include "written message" or "written down words" or "writing."

(See also: encourage, exhort, teach)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, H6600, G1121, G1989, G1992

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 2:9-10
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 6:17-19

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms "everlasting" and "eternal" have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term "eternity" refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase "forever and ever" has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term "forever" refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean "a very long time."

- The term "forever and ever" emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase "forever and ever" is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last "forever." This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "eternal" or "everlasting" could include"unending" or "never stopping" or "always continuing."
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" could also be translated as "life that never ends" or "life that continues without stopping" or "the raising up of our bodies to live forever."
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "eternity" could include "existing outside of time" or "unending life" or "life in heaven."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- "Forever" could also be translated by "always" or "never ending."
- The phrase "will last forever" could also be translated as "always exist" or "will never stop" or "will always continue."
- The emphatic phrase "forever and ever" could also be translated as "for always and always" or "not ever ending" or "which never, ever ends."
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as "David's descendant will reign forever" or "a descendant of David will always be reigning."

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Exodus 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Luke 18:18-21
- Acts 13:46-47
- Romans 05:20-21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 13:1-3

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Timothy 06:9-10
- 3 John 01:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 9:35
- Nehemiah 13:6-7
- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32-33
- Genesis 30:31-32
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 15:3-5
- Mark 06:33-34
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 12:11-12
- Matthew 25:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, "All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:31-32
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 12:38-39

exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
- "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
- "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47-49
- Acts 05:29-32
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46-47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:5-6

exile, exiles, exiled

Definition:

The term "exile" refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The "Babylonian exile" (or "the exile") is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase "the exiles" refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "exile" could also be translated as to "send away" or to "force out" or to "banish."
- The term "the exile" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the sent away time" or "the time of banishment" or "the time of forced absence" or "banishment."
- Ways to translate "the exiles" could include "the exiled people" or "the people who were banished" or "the people exiled to Babylon."

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:13-14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:6-7

Ezra

Facts:

Ezra was an Israelite priest and expert in Jewish law who recorded the history of the Israelites' return to Jerusalem from Babylon where Israel had been held captive for 70 years.

- Ezra recorded this part of Israel's history in the biblical book of Ezra. He may also have written the book of Nehemiah, since these two books had originally been one single book.
- When Ezra returned to Jerusalem he re-established the Law, since the Israelites had stopped obeying the Sabbath laws and had intermarried with women who practiced pagan religions.
- Ezra also helped rebuild the temple, which had been destroyed by the Babylonians when they captured Jerusalem.
- There are two other men named Ezra mentioned in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, exile, Jerusalem, law, Nehemiah, temple)

Bible References:

- Ezra 07:6-7
- Nehemiah 08:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H250, H5830, H5831, H5834

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:4-5
- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 12:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:12-14
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:32-35
- Nehemiah 12:36-37

face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown

Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 8:6-8

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

- The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
- God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."
- Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal."
- The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God."
- The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying."
- In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Joshua 02:14

- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:5-7
- Luke 12:45-46
- Luke 16:10-12
- Colossians 01:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- 3 John 01:5-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 9:32-34

family, families

Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- Exodus 01:20-22
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 7:5
- Nehemiah 7:61-63
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 11:13-14
- Nehemiah 12:22-23

famine, famines

Definition:

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who detroy crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11-13
- Genesis 12:10-13
- Genesis 45:4-6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25-27
- Matthew 24:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:1-3

fast, fasts, fasted, fasting, fastings

Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
- The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:33-35
- Mark 02:18-19
- Matthew 06:16-18
- Matthew 09:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** "'For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.'"
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G777, G3521, G3522, G3523

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:1-2

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
- The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- Acts 02:43-45
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Luke 12:4-5
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 6:8-9
- Nehemiah 6:12-14
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 7:1-2

feast, feasts, feasting

Definition:

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: festival)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30-31
- Genesis 29:21-22
- Genesis 40:20-23
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:41-44
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H2287, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4580, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G755, G1062, G1173, G1403, G1456, G1858, G1859, G2165, G3521, G4910

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:32-33

festival, festivals

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
- Passover
- Festival of Unleavened Bread
- Firstfruits
- Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
- Festival of Trumpets
- Day of Atonement
- Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Exodus 05:1-2
- John 04:43-45
- Luke 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

fig, figs

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 13:6-7
- Mark 11:13-14
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:15

fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:5-7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:3
- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:13-14
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 9:12-13

firstborn

Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "first-born" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:32-34
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:34-36

firstfruits

Definition:

The term "firstfruits" refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the "firstfruits" of all believers in him, belivers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the "firstfruits" of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as "first portion (of crops)" or "first part of the harvest."
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- Psalms 105:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 2 John 01:7-8
- Ephesians 06:12-13
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 02:24-25
- John 01:14-15
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Romans 08:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:4-5

flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term "herd" can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term "flock" in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to "flocks and herds" it may be better to add "of sheep" or "of cattle" for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: goat, ox, pig, sheep,)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30-32
- Matthew 26:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:34-36

forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:15-17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:10-11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:1-2
- Luke 05:20-21

- Acts 08:20-23
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:16-17

forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook

Definition:

The term "forsake" means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been "forsaken" has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people "forsake" God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God "forsakes" people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God's teachings.
- The term "forsaken" can be used in the past tense, as in "he has forsaken you" or as in referring to someone who has "been forsaken."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "abandon" or "neglect" or "give up" or "go away from" or "leave behind," depending on the context.
- To "forsake" God's law could be translated "disobey God's law." This could also be translated as "abandon" or "give up on" or "stop obeying" his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase "be forsaken" can be translated as "be abandoned" or "be deserted."
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:30-31

fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing

Definition:

The terms "fountain" and "spring" usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term "flood" is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Genesis 07:11-12
- Genesis 08:1-3
- Genesis 24:12-14
- Genesis 24:42-44
- James 03:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H794, H953, H1530, H1543, H1876, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H6780, H7823, H8444, H8666, G242, G305, G393, G985, G1530, G1816, G4077, G4855, G5453

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:13-14
- Nehemiah 3:14-15
- Nehemiah 12:36-37

fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is "fruitful" has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term "fruitful" always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term "fruitful" is also used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces–"that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural ,"fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."

- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 07:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:25
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Nehemiah 10:37-38

gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The "gate bar" refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 09:23-25
- Acts 10:17-18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- Matthew 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:3
- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:7-8

- Nehemiah 2:13-14
- Nehemiah 2:15-16
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:3-5
- Nehemiah 3:6-7
- Nehemiah 3:13
- Nehemiah 3:14-15
- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 3:31-32
- Nehemiah 6:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:3-4
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:29-30
- Nehemiah 12:31
- Nehemiah 12:36-37
- Nehemiah 12:38-39
- Nehemiah 13:19-20

Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, Jericho, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:29-31
- 1 Kings 03:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:12-13
- Joshua 09:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

*__15:06__ But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.

*__15:07__ Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.

*__15:08__ So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:6-7
- Nehemiah 7:23-26

gift, gifts

Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: spirit, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
- 2 Samuel 11:6-8
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 11:17-18
- Acts 24:17-19
- James 01:17-18
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 08:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 9:36-37

Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:21-22
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Amos 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:61-63

glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:16-18
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- Luke 18:42-43
- Luke 02:8-9
- John 12:27-29
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:16-17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:18-20
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:5-6
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811, G4888

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:5-6

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 2:11-12
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 4:19-20
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 6:8-9
- Nehemiah 6:12-14
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:5
- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:3-4
- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:18-19
- Nehemiah 9:30-31
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:36-37
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 12:46-47
- Nehemiah 13:1-3
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:21-22
- Nehemiah 13:25-27
- Nehemiah 13:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:1-3

- Exodus 32:1-2
- Psalms 031:5-7
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 19:26-27
- Romans 02:21-22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

Uses:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 12 General Notes

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:6-7
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:14-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Daniel 02:31-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:31-32
- Nehemiah 7:70-72

good, goodness

Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Genesis 02:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- James 03:13-14
- Romans 02:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God plantedâ€¦the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** ”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** ”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:20-21
- Nehemiah 9:25
- Nehemiah 9:35
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls

Definition:

A "governor" is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To "govern" means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term "proconsul" was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A "government" consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "governor" can also be translated as "ruler" or "overseer" or "regional leader" or "one who rules over a small territory."
- Depending on the context, the term "govern" could also be translated as, "rule over" or "lead" or "manage" or supervise."
- The term "governor" should be translated differently than the terms for "king" or "emperor", since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term "proconsul" could also be translated as, "Roman governor" or "Roman provincial ruler."

(See also: authority, king, power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22-24
- Acts 26:30-32
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:16-18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H324, H1777, H2142, H2280, H2710, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H6664, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 2:9-10
- Nehemiah 3:6-7
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 10:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:24-26

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

Bible References:

- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:3-4
- Colossians 04:5-6
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:6-7
- John 01:16-18
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:16-17

- Nehemiah 9:30-31

grain offering, grain offerings

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering , sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19-20
- Leviticus 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:8-9

grain, grains, grainfields

Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:1-2
- Mark 02:23-24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:1-3
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:15

grape, grapes, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individiual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:31-33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H2490, H3196, H5563, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:15

grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:5-6
- Genesis 50:4-6
- John 19:40-42
- Luke 23:52-53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Romans 03:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, "Where have you put Lazarus?" They told him, "In the **tomb**. Come and see."
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, "Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see."

The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1164, H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G86, G2750, G3418, G3419, G5028

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 3:16-17

hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?" (See: metonymy)
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 08:14-17
- Acts 11:19-21
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Genesis 14:19-20
- John 03:34-36
- Mark 07:31-32
- Matthew 06:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 9:23-24
- Nehemiah 13:21-22

harp, harps, harpist, harpists

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: David, fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Psalm 033:1-3
- Revelation 05:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:27-28

head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations." This could be translated as "You have made me the ruler…" or "You have given me authority over…"
- Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for "head" is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph. (See: synecdoche)
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H1627, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 11:13-14

heart, hearts

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:16-18
- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 15:7-9
- Luke 08:14-15
- Mark 02:5-7
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 22:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:11-12
- Nehemiah 6:8-9
- Nehemiah 7:5
- Nehemiah 9:7-8

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- John 03:12-13
- John 03:27-28
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:23-24
- Nehemiah 9:26-27
- Nehemiah 9:28-29

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz, who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah became very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God performed a miracle and caused the sun to move backwards in the sky.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, false god, Judah, Sennacherib)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- Hosea 01:1-2
- Matthew 01:9-11
- Proverbs 25:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2396, H3169, G1478

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:19-22

high priest

Definition:

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiphas' father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

Translation Suggestions:

- "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "chief priest."

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, chief priests, priest, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:26-28
- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 09:1-2
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32-33
- Luke 03:1-2
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.

- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, "Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?"
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:20-21
- Nehemiah 13:28-29

Hittite, Hittites

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:10-11
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:7-8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:14-17
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:20-21
- Nehemiah 9:30-31

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftensed to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:20-22
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 11:7-10
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:21-23
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 03:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

Uses:

- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8:9-10

- Nehemiah 8:11-12
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 11:1-2
- Nehemiah 11:17-18

honor, honors

Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:15-17
- John 04:43-45
- John 12:25-26
- Mark 06:4-6
- Matthew 15:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11

horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, , donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Kings 02:11-12
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 7:68-69

horseman, horsemen

Definition:

In Bible times, the term "horsemen" referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called "horsemen," though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as "horse riders" or "men on horses."

(See also: chariot, horse)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:5-6
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:9-10

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:12-13
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 12:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

Uses:

- Nehemiah 6:10-11
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 10:37-38

- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 11:10-12
- Nehemiah 11:15-16
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 12:40-42
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:6-7
- Nehemiah 13:8-9
- Nehemiah 13:10-11
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
- "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:47-50
- Genesis 39:3-4
- Genesis 41:39-41
- Luke 08:38-39
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 15:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 3:8-10
- Nehemiah 3:16-17
- Nehemiah 3:20-21
- Nehemiah 3:22-24
- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 3:31-32
- Nehemiah 6:10-11
- Nehemiah 7:39-42
- Nehemiah 8:16-17

household, households

Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 34:18-19
- John 04:53-54
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Philippians 04:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:8-9

incense, incenses

Definition:

The term "incense" refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The "altar of incense" was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate "incense" could include "fragrant spices" or "good-smelling plants."

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4-5
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:8-9

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."
- To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

Uses:

- Nehemiah 11:19-21

iniquity, iniquities

Definition:

The term "iniquity" is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term "sin," but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word "iniquity" literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include "perversity" and "depravity," which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "iniquity" could be translated as "wickedness" or "perverse actions" or "harmful acts."
- Often, "iniquity" occurs in the same text as the word "sin" and "transgression" so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16-17
- Habakkuk 02:12-14
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:4-6

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 13:23-25
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:28-31
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 27:9-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

*08:15 The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'" ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

Uses:

- Introduction to Nehemiah
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 2:9-10
- Nehemiah 7:61-63
- Nehemiah 7:73
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:19-21
- Nehemiah 12:46-47
- Nehemiah 13:1-3
- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:13-16
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:77-79
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35-37
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

*15:01 Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**. ***15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**. ***15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:35-38

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:4-5
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 1:3
- Nehemiah 2:11-12
- Nehemiah 2:13-14
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 3:8-10
- Nehemiah 3:11-12
- Nehemiah 3:22-24
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 4:21-23
- Nehemiah 6:7
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:3-4
- Nehemiah 7:6-7
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 11:1-2
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:5-6
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 12:27-28
- Nehemiah 12:29-30
- Nehemiah 12:43
- Nehemiah 13:6-7
- Nehemiah 13:15

- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:19-20

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:9-11
- John 02:13-14
- Matthew 28:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:15-16
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 5:1-3
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:16-17
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 13:23-24

Joab

Definition:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout David's entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander of King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew, since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: Absalom, David)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- 1 Kings 01:7-8
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 2 Samuel 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 07:11-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3097

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:11-14

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21-22
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Joshua 01:1-3
- Numbers 27:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

*14:04 When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like. ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land." ***14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.

*14:15 **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God. ***15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:16-17

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- Psalm 048:1-3
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:6-7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29-30
- Acts 16:32-34

- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:15-18
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:1-3
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** ”The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **34:04** ”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5938, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2620, G2744, G2745, G3685, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:11-12
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 12:27-28
- Nehemiah 12:43
- Nehemiah 12:43

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- Luke 03:33-35
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Uses:

- Nehemiah 11:3-4

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: Judah, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:7-8
- Hosea 05:14-15
- Jeremiah 07:33-34
- Judges 01:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

****18:07** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.\ ****18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.\ ****18:13** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.\ ****20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.\ ****20:05** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.\ ****20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.\ ****20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4438, H3063

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 4:10-11
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 6:7
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 7:6-7
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:19-21
- Nehemiah 11:25-27
- Nehemiah 11:31-36
- Nehemiah 12:31
- Nehemiah 12:32-35
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:15
- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:23-24

just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: abstractnouns)

- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16-17
- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3-5
- Luke 18:6-8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:39-41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:3-4
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:32-34

king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
- Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- 2 Samuel 05:3-5
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:21-22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 14:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

*08:06 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. ***16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. ***16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. ***17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. ***21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. ***48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 2:9-10
- Nehemiah 2:13-14
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 3:14-15
- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 6:7
- Nehemiah 7:6-7
- Nehemiah 9:22
- Nehemiah 9:23-24
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 13:6-7
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

kingdom, kingdoms

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36-37
- Mark 03:23-25
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:18-19
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Revelation 01:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:22
- Nehemiah 9:35

know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 2 Corinthians 02:14-15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4

- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Luke 01:76-77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1231, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G3877, G4267, G4894

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:10-11
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 8:11-12
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
- all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:5-6
- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

- Romans 03:19-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

Uses:

- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9:3-4
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:26-27
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes

law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
- This meaning of "law" is different from its meaning in the term "law of Moses," where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, "law" could be translated as "principle" or "general rule."

(See also: law, law)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:1-2
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:4-5
- John 18:31-32
- Romans 07:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:1-3

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:33-34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:16-17
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:43-45
- Nehemiah 7:73
- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:11-12
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 9:3-4

- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 9:38
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:15-16
- Nehemiah 11:17-18
- Nehemiah 11:19-21
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 11:31-36
- Nehemiah 12:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:8-9
- Nehemiah 12:22-23
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:27-28
- Nehemiah 12:29-30
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 12:46-47
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:10-11
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:21-22
- Nehemiah 13:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, "life" could be translated as "spiritual life" or "eternal life," depending on the context.
- The concept of "spiritual life" could also be translated as "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Acts 10:42-43
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Jeremiah 44:1-3
- John 01:4-5
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 12:22-23
- Matthew 07:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 3:6-7
- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 3:31-32
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:12-14

- Nehemiah 5:1-3
- Nehemiah 6:10-11
- Nehemiah 7:3-4
- Nehemiah 7:73
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 11:1-2
- Nehemiah 11:19-21
- Nehemiah 11:25-27
- Nehemiah 11:28-30
- Nehemiah 11:31-36
- Nehemiah 12:27-28
- Nehemiah 13:16-18

light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 2 Corinthians 04:5-6
- Acts 26:15-18
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- John 01:4-5
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 06:22-24
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:12-13

livestock

Facts:

The term "livestock" refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as "farm animals."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, donkey, goat, horse, ox, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29-30
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H929, H4399, H4735

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:36-37

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

Facts:

In the Old Testament, "Lord Yahweh" is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term "Lord" is a divine title and "Yahweh" is God's personal name.
- "Yahweh" is also often combined with the term "God" to form "Yahweh God."

Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of "Yahweh" is used for the translation of God's personal name, the terms "Lord Yahweh" and "Yahweh God" can be translated literally. Also consider how the term "Lord" is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as "Yahweh Lord." Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title "Lord" come before or after "Yahweh"?
- "Yahweh God" could also be rendered as "God who is called Yahweh" or "God who is the Living One" or "I am, who is God."
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering "Yahweh" as "Lord" or "LORD," the term "Lord Yahweh" could be translated as "Lord God" or "God who is the Lord." Other possible translations could be, "Master LORD" or "God the LORD."
- The term "Lord Yahweh" *should not* be rendered as "Lord LORD" because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words and it would look very strange.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:3-4
- 2 Samuel 07:21-23
- Deuteronomy 03:23-25
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Jeremiah 44:26-28
- Judges 06:22-24
- Micah 01:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H430, H3068, G2316, G2962

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

Definition:

The term "lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:1-2
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:22-23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- Jude 01:5-6
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:9-10

lots, casting lots

Definition:

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
- If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:6-7
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:33-34
- Mark 15:22-24
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H2256, H5307, G2624, G2819, G2975, G3091

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 11:1-2

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
8. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 John 03:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 04:9-12
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- John 03:16-18
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

lute, lyre, lyres

Definition:

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modernday acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: harp)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5443

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:27-28

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:26-27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:20-21

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 19:16-17
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:12-13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27-28
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.

- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, "What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?" He replied, "The one who was **merciful** to him."
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, "No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you."
- **34:09** "But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 9:26-27
- Nehemiah 9:30-31
- Nehemiah 13:21-22

messenger, messengers

Facts:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 11:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

Uses:

- Nehemiah 6:3-4

might, mighty, mightier, mightily

Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
- The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
- God is also referred to as the "mighty one."
- The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
- The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
- Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
- The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H193, H202, H352, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1370, H1396, H1397, H1401, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2394, H2428, H3201, H3524,

H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5868, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H6697, H6743, H7227, H7580, H7989, H8623, H8624, H8632, G972, G1411, G1413, G1414, G1415, G1498, G1752, G1754, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3168, G3173, G5082

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:32-34

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded

Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "changed his mind and went" could also be translated as "decided differently and went" or "decided to go after all" or "changed his opinion and went."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:25-28
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:28-30
- Matthew 22:37-38
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 6:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:21-22
- Nehemiah 13:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

Definition:

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
- The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:15-18
- Acts 04:21-22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3

- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:57-58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:9-10
- Nehemiah 9:16-17

Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabitess" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:11-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 13:1-3
- Nehemiah 13:23-24

mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at

Definition:

The terms "mock," ridicule," and "scoff at" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:27-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

*21:12 Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah. ***39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, "He deserves to die!" Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him. ***39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!" ***40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God?" ***40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H5953, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 4:1-3

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:20-21
- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 02:9-10
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Matthew 17:3-4
- Romans 05:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

*09:12 One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire. ***12:05 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." ***12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters. ***12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God. ***13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:1-3

mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully

Facts:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11-13
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1669, H1671, H1897, H1899, H1993, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H6969, H7300, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:9-10

name, names, named

Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12-14
- 2 Timothy 02:19-21
- Acts 04:5-7
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 09:26-27
- Genesis 12:1-3
- Genesis 35:9-10
- Matthew 18:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 6:12-14
- Nehemiah 7:61-63
- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 9:9-10
- Nehemiah 9:38
- Nehemiah 10:1-3

nation, nations

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 13:19-20
- Acts 17:26-27
- Acts 26:4-5
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 5:16-17
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, Babylon, Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:13-15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 01:1-2
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Ezekiel 26:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

*20:06 About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. ***20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year. ***20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind. ***20:09 Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:6-7

Nehemiah

Facts:

Nehemiah was an Israelite forced to move to the Babylonian empire when the people of Israel and Judah were taken captive by the Babylonians.

- While he was the cupbearer to the Persian king, Artaxerxes, Nehemiah asked the king for permission to return to Jerusalem.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in rebuilding the walls of Jerusalem which had been destroyed by the Babylonians.
- For twelve years Nehemiah was the governor of Jerusalem before returning to the king's palace.
- The Old Testament book of Nehemiah tells the story of Nehemiah's work in rebuilding the walls and his governing of the people in Jerusalem.
- There were also other men named Nehemiah in the Old Testament. Usually the name of the father was added, to distinguish which Nehemiah was being talked about.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, Jerusalem, son)

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:1-2
- Nehemiah 01:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:46-47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5166

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:6-7
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 10:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:46-47

neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:13-15
- James 02:8-9
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:56-58
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Matthew 22:39-40

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen

Definition:

The term "noble" refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A "nobleman" is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man "of noble birth" is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term "nobleman" could also be translated by, "king's official" or "government officer."

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Ecclesiastes 10:16-17
- Luke 19:11-12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H678, H1281, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7336, H7261, H8282, H8269, H8321, G937, G2104, G2903

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:15-16

oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" means is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31
- Luke 01:72-75
- Mark 06:26-29

- Matthew 05:36-37
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:71-72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

Obadiah

Facts:

Obadiah was an Old Testament prophet who prophesied against the people of Edom, who were the descendants of Esau. There were also many other men named Obadiah in the Old Testament.

- The book of Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament and tells a prophecy that Obadiah received through a vision from God.
- It is not clear when Obadiah lived and prophesied. It may have been during the paeriods that Jehoram, Ahaziah, Joash, and Athaliah, reigned in Judah. The prophets Daniel, Ezekiel, and Jeremiah would also have been prophesying during part of this time.
- Obadiah may also have lived at a later time period, during the reign of King Zedekiah and the Babylonian captivity.
- Other men named Obadiah included a descendant of Sau,; a Gadite who became one of David's men, a palace administrator for King Ahab, an official of King Jehoshaphat, a man who helped with repairs to the temple during the time of King Josiah, and a Levite who was also a gatekeeper during the time of Nehemiah.
- It could be that the writer of the book of Obadiah was one of these men.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Babylon, David, Edom, Esau, Ezekiel, Daniel, Gad, Jehoshaphat, Josiah, Levite, Saul (OT), Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 08:38-40
- Ezra 08:8-11
- Obadiah 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5662

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 12:24-26

obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in "do not steal."

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:22-25
- James 02:10-11
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G544, G3980, G3982, G4198, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 12:24-26

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21-22
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1880, H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

olive, olives

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:10-12
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 16:5-7
- Psalms 052:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 9:25

oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors

Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

- The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
- Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
- The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
- The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:133-134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H4939, H5065, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

Uses:

- Nehemiah 05 General Notes
- Nehemiah 5:14-15

oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers

Definition:

The term "overseer" refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms "overseers," "elders," and "shepherds/pastors" are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be "supervisor" or "caretaker" or "manager."
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God's people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "spiritual supervisor" or "someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers" or "person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church."

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- Acts 20:28-30
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

Uses:

- Nehemiah 11:7-9

palace, palaces

Definition:

The term "palace" refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H759, H1001, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, H2038, H2918, H8651, G833, G933, G4232

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:36-37

palm, palms

Definition:

The term "palm" refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a "date." The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, Jerusalem, peace)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:13-15

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term "peoples" or "people groups" refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart "a people" for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as "your people" can mean "your people group" or "your family" or "your relatives."
- The term "peoples" is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term "nations" is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
- A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
- The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
- The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
- The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
- The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G246, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 2:9-10
- Nehemiah 4:10-11
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:22
- Nehemiah 9:23-24
- Nehemiah 9:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 11:1-2
- Nehemiah 11:25-27

- Nehemiah 11:31-36
- Nehemiah 13:1-3
- Nehemiah 13:16-18

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term "people of God" refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says "my people" he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God's people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, "people of God" refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, "people of God" especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people of God" could be translated as "God's people" or "the people who worship God" or "people who serve God" or "people who belong to God."
- When God says "my people" other ways to translate it could include "the people I have chosen" or "the people who worship me" or "the people who belong to me."
- Similarly, "your people" could be translated as "the people who belong to you" or "the people you chose to belong to you."
- Also "his people" could be translated as "the people who belong to him" or "the people God chose to belong to himself."

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8

Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called "Persians."
- Under King Cyrus' decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21
- Daniel 10:12-13
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezekiel 27:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:22-23

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: egypt, king)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:11-13
- Acts 07:20-21
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 40:6-8
- Genesis 41:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08** **Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:9-10

pledge, pledged, pledges

Definition:

The term "pledge" refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- To "pledge" could be translate as to "formally commit to" or to "strongly promise."
- The term "pledge" can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate "a pledge" could include "a solemn promise" or "a formal commitment" or "a guarantee" or "a formal assurance," depending on the context.

(See also: promise, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:4-5
- Exodus 22:25-27
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162, G728

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:28-29

possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Facts:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy' or "live on," depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, "possessions" could be translated as "belongings" or "property" or "owned things" or "things they owned."
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
- The expression, "found in his possession" could be translated as, "that he was holding" or "that he had with him."
- The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as, "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
- The phrase, "in his possession" could be translated as "that he owned" or "which belonged to him."

(See also: Canaan, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:43-45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37

- Matthew 13:44-46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:22
- Nehemiah 9:23-24

power, powers

Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
- An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Jude 01:24-25
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Philippians 03:20-21
- Psalm 080:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God."

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 5:4-5

praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:3-4
- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 13:48-49
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46-47
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

*12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army. ***17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings. ***22:07** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people! ***43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other. ***47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H6953, H7121, H7150, G1229, G1256, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3853, G3955, G4283, G4296

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:46-47

pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:8-10
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:23-26
- Colossians 04:2-4
- John 17:9-11
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

*06:05 Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. ***19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, "Hear us, O Baal!" ***21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. ***38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. ***43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. ***49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H5315, H5375, H6293, H6419, H6739, H6963, H7121, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 11:17-18

priest, priests, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22

- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

*04:07 ”Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High” ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. ***19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. ***21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:15-16
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:22-24
- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 7:39-42
- Nehemiah 7:61-63
- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 08 General Notes
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:13-15

- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 9:38
- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:10-12
- Nehemiah 11:19-21
- Nehemiah 12:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:4-7
- Nehemiah 12:12-14
- Nehemiah 12:22-23
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:29-30
- Nehemiah 12:32-35
- Nehemiah 12:40-42
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

prince, princes, princess, princesses

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52-53

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7101, H7261, H7333, H7336, H7786, H7991, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G2232, G3175

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Nehemiah 9:38

prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments

Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for "prison" is "jail."
- This term could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be "captives."
- Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be, "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive."

(See also: captive)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:4-5
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Luke 12:57-59
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:16-17
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Matthew 14:3-5
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6115, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5083, G5084, G5438, G5439

prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonmenttranslationW

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:4-6

proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate "proclaim" could include "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could also be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."

(See also: preach)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3853, G4135

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:13-15

profane, profaned, profaning

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to "profane" could be translated as to "treat as unholy" or to "be irreverent toward" or to "dishonor."
- God told the Israelites that they "profaned" themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves "unclean" or "dishonored" by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective "profane" could be translated as "dishonoring" or "godless" or "unholy."

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:5-6
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2613, H2930, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:16-18

promise, promises, promised

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:8-10
- James 01:12-13
- Numbers 30:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."Â�
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes

Promised Land

Facts:

The term "Promised Land" only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Promised Land" can be translated as the "land that God said he would give to Abraham" or "land that God promised to Abraham" or "land God promised to his people" or "land of Canaan."
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of "the land God promised."

(See also: Canaan, promise)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land**!
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:09** This period of time when God's people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

Uses:

- Introduction to Nehemiah

prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached." (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:24-26
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:22-23

- Matthew 02:17-18
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Uses:

- Nehemiah 6:7
- Nehemiah 6:12-14
- Nehemiah 9:26-27
- Nehemiah 9:30-31
- Nehemiah 9:32-34

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
- A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
- The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
- Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:5-8
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 02:22-24
- Revelation 14:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:29-30
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:8-9
- Nehemiah 13:21-22

queen, queens

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as "queen mother" usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, king. Persia ruler, Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 08:26-28
- Esther 01:16-18
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:4-6

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, **raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "restore" or "rebuild."
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "exalt" someone or something.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:11-12
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 7:64-65

rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
- "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
- The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
- The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:37-38
- Luke 23:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

*14:14 After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead. ***18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam. ***18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin. ***18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods. ***20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon. ***45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, "You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:26-27

receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "was healed by God so that he was able to see."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:1-2
- Acts 08:14-17
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Luke 09:5-6
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, ”Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:37-38

refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering

Definition:

The term "refuge" refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A "refugee" is someone who is seeking a safe place. A "shelter" refers to a place that can protect from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term "city of refuge" in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could go for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A "shelter" is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes "shelter" means "protection," as when Lot said that his guests were "under the shelter" of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because he was taking responsibility to protect them as members of his household.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "refuge" could be translated as "safe place" or "place of protection."
- "Refugees" are people leaving their home to escape from a dangerous situation, and could be translated as "aliens," "homeless people," or "exiles."
- Depending on the context, the term "shelter" could be translated as "something that protects" or "protection" or "protected place."
- If it refers to a physical structure, "shelter" could also be translated as "protective building" or "house of safety."
- The phrase "into safe shelter" could be translated as "into a safe place" or "into a place that will protect."
- To "find shelter" or to "take shelter" or to "take refuge" could be translated as to "find a place of safety" or to "put oneself in a protected place."

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Isaiah 23:13-14
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Psalm 046:1-3
- Psalms 028:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4498, H4585, H4733, H4869

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:16-17

reign, reigns, reigned, reigning

Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:22-23

remnant

Definition:

The term "remnant" literally refers to people or things that are "remaining" or "left over" from a larger amount or group.

- Often a "remnant" refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a "remnant" of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term "remnant" implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as "the remnant of this people" could be translated as "the rest of these people" or "the people who remain faithful" or "the people who are left."
- The "whole remnant of people" could be translated by "all the rest of the people" or "the remaining people."

Bible References:

- Acts 15:15-18
- Amos 09:11-12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:7-8
- Isaiah 11:10-11
- Micah 04:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2

repent, repents, repented, repentance

Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
- In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
- Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
- Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:29-32
- Luke 24:45-47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, "**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!"

- **42:08** ""It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. "
- **44:05** "So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

Uses:

- Nehemiah 01 General Notes
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes

report, reports, reported

Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:37-38
- Luke 05:15-16
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1426, G1834, G2036, G2162, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

Uses:

- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 6:7
- Nehemiah 6:17-19

rest, rests, rested, resting, restless

Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something. A "rest" is to stop working.

- An object can be said to be "resting" somewhere, which means it is "standing" or "sitting" there.
- A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To rest an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "rest (oneself)" could also be translated as to "stop working" or to "refresh himself" or to "stop carrying burdens."
- To "rest" an object on something could be translated as to "place" or "put" or "set" that object on something.
- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace" or "I will empower you to relax and trust in me."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the other people" or "everything that is left."

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Revelation 14:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677,

H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:30-31

restore, restores, restored, restoration

Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- A broken relationship that is restored has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- When property is "restored," it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- Acts 03:21-23
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:8-10
- Matthew 12:13-14
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:1-3

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good
- Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Job 01:6-8
- Psalms 037:28-30
- Psalms 049:14-15
- Psalms 107:41-43
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Malachi 02:5-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Colossians 03:22-25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.

- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 9:12-13

robe, robes, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22-24
- Luke 20:45-47
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2066, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:12-13

ruin, ruins, ruined

Definition:

To "ruin" something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term "ruin" or "ruins" refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to "ruin" could be translated as to "destroy" or to "spoil" or to "make useless" or to "break."
- The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as "rubble" or "broken-down buildings" or "destroyed city" or "devastation" or "brokenness" or "destruction," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4383, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2679, G2692, G3639, G4485

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:17-18

rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
- Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
- The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It is means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11-12
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:41-42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25-28
- Titus 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:15-16

- Nehemiah 3:8-10
- Nehemiah 3:11-12
- Nehemiah 3:14-15
- Nehemiah 3:16-17
- Nehemiah 3:18-19
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 9:36-37

Sabbath

Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:5-6
- Leviticus 19:1-4
- Luke 13:12-14
- Mark 02:27-28
- Matthew 12:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me."

- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13:15
- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:19-20
- Nehemiah 13:21-22

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase "sackcloth and ashes" was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "coarse cloth from animal hair" or "clothes made of goat hair" or "rough, scratchy clothing."
- Another way to translate this term could be "rough, scratchy mourning clothes."
- The phrase "sit in sackcloth and ashes" could be translated as "show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31-32
- Genesis 37:34-36
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 10:13-15
- Matthew 11:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:1-2

sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

Translation Suggestions

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 21:25-26
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12-14
- Matthew 05:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4469, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 12:43
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:30-31

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:4-5
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

*20:04 Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**. ***27:08** ”The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)” ***27:09** ”The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him.” ***45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:1-3

sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "sanctify" can be translated as "set apart" or "make holy" or "purify."
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God's service. Often the word "consecrate" is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is "consecrate," this term could be translated as "dedicate someone (or something) to God's service."
- Depending on the context, the phrase "your sanctification" could be translated as "making you holy" or "setting you apart (for God)" or "what makes you holy."

(See also: consecrate, holy, set apart)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6942, G37, G38

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:21-22

sanctuary

Definition:

The term "sanctuary" literally means "holy place" and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sanctuary" was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the "holy place" and "most holy place" were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a "sanctuary" or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of "holy place" or "place that is set apart."
- Depending on the context, the term "sanctuary" could be translated as "holy place" or "sacred building" or "God's holy dwelling place" or "holy place of protection" or "sacred place of safety."
- The phrase "shekel of the sanctuary" could be translated as "kind of shekel given for the tabernacle" or "shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple."
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, Holy Spirit, holy, set apart, tabernacle, tax, temple,)

Bible References:

- Amos 07:12-13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Hebrews 08:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Psalms 078:67-69

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4720, H6944, G39

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:39

scribe, scribes

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:45-47
- Mark 01:21-22
- Mark 02:15-16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28-29
- Matthew 12:38-40
- Matthew 13:51-53

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:4-5
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:36-37
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: Arabia. Canaan, Egypt)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 04:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

*12:04 When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the **Red Sea**. ***12:05** Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**." ***13:01** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:9-10

seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

Bible References:

- Exodus 02:3-4
- Isaiah 29:11-12
- John 06:26-27
- Matthew 27:65-66
- Revelation 05:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:38
- Nehemiah 10:1-3

send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out

Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause...to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term "send" is also used in expressions such as to "send word" or to "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 10:40-41
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 6:3-4
- Nehemiah 6:8-9

serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

Definition:

The term "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for."
- When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- The term "service" refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a "meeting" of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: covenant, law, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402,

G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256### Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 9:35
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 12:24-26

shield, shields, shielded

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, andt were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36-37
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 018:35-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:15-16

sign, signs, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- "Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:

    - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
    - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.

- Signs can reveal or point to something:

    - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.\
    - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

- Signs can prove that something is true:

    - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
    - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14-15
- Genesis 09:11-13
- John 02:17-19

- Luke 02:10-12
- Mark 08:11-13
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:9-10

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Matthew 26:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:14-15

sin offering, sin offerings

Definition:

The "sin offering" was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal's body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus' death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: altar, cow, forgive, sacrifice, sin)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Leviticus 05:11
- Numbers 07:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2401, H2402, H2398, H2403

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:32-33

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 6:12-14
- Nehemiah 09 General Notes
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

Sinai, Mount Sinai

Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: desert, Egypt, Horeb, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

*13:01 After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**. ***13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast. ***13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God. ***15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H5514, G3735, G4614

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:12-13

sister, sisters

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: brother in Christ, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22-23
- Philemon 01:1-3
- Romans 16:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H269, H1323, G27, G79

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:6-8

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bathsheba, David, Israel, Judah, kingdom of Israel, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27-28
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:27-29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

*17:14 Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**. ***18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy. ***18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. ***18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods. ***18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:57-60
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

son, sons

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?â€š" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:3-5
- Nehemiah 3:6-7
- Nehemiah 3:8-10
- Nehemiah 3:11-12
- Nehemiah 3:14-15

- Nehemiah 3:16-17
- Nehemiah 3:18-19
- Nehemiah 3:20-21
- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 5:1-3
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:5-6
- Nehemiah 11:7-9
- Nehemiah 11:10-12
- Nehemiah 11:13-14
- Nehemiah 11:15-16
- Nehemiah 11:17-18
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 12:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:22-23
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:32-35
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:25-27
- Nehemiah 13:28-29

spear, spears, spearmen

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance."
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, sword, warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:18-19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 4:21-23

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and " command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Numbers 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H6490, H7010

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

stone, stones, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:5-7
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34-35
- Luke 20:5-6
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 9:11

suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings

Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase "suffer me" means "bear with me" or "hear me out" or "listen patiently."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Psalms 022:24-25
- Revelation 01:9-11
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, "I have seen the **suffering** of my people."
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, "My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**."

- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:04** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4342, H4531, H4912, H5142, H5254, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4841, G5004, G5723

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:26-27

sword, swords, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Matthew 26:55-56
- Revelation 01:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

Uses:

-
-

tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers

Definition:

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term "tax" could also be translated as, "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
- To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government.
- A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.

(See also: Bethlehem, census, citizen, Rome, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G583, G5411

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:4-5

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:1-3
- Acts 03:7-8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:45-46
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered

sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.' "
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 3:31-32
- Nehemiah 6:10-11
- Nehemiah 7:46-49
- Nehemiah 7:57-60
- Nehemiah 7:73
- Nehemiah 10 General Notes
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:19-21
- Nehemiah 13 General Notes

tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes

Definition:

The terms "tenth" and "tithe" refer to "ten percent" or "one-out-of-ten portion" of one's money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as "one-tenth" or "one out of ten."

(See also: believe, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, minister, sacrifice tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- Isaiah 06:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome

Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress.To be "troubled" means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- Luke 24:38-40
- Matthew 24:6-8
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H598, H926, H927, H928, H1204, H1205, H1607, H1644, H1804, H1993, H2000, H2113, H2189, H2560, H2960, H4103, H5590, H5753, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7481, H7489, H7515, H7561, H8513,

G387, G1298, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2553, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5016, G5182

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:3
- Nehemiah 2:17-18

true, truth, truths

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be "true."

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- God's word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 3 John 01:5-8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:4-6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:17-18
- James 03:13-14
- James 05:19-20

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

*__02:04__ The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die." *__14:06__ Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" *__16:01__ The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. *__31:08__ They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." *__39:10__ "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:12-13

trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

Definition:

The term "trumpet" refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:11-13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:18-21
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 24:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:17-18
- Nehemiah 4:19-20
- Nehemiah 12:32-35
- Nehemiah 12:40-42

trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
- The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
- The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Psalm 031:5-7
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

Uses:

- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" can mean to "stop" doing something or to reject someone.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: false god, leprosy, worship)

747

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:1-2
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 11:19-21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:16-17
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Revelation 11:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G576, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

Uses:

- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 9:35

Ur

Facts:

Ur was an important city along the Euphrates River in the ancient region of Chaldea, which was part of Mesopotamia. This region was located in what is now the modern-day country of Iraq.

- Abraham was from the city of Ur and it was from there that God called him to leave to go to the land of Canaan.
- Haran, the brother of Abraham and father of Lot, died in Ur. This was probably a factor that influenced Lot to leave Ur with Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, Chaldea, Euphrates River, Haran, Lot, Mesopotamia)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H218

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:7-8

Uriah

Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaz, Bathsheba, David, Hittite)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:4-6
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 03:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

*17:12 Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed. *17:13 After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H223, G3774

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:3-5

vineyard, vineyards

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:6-7
- Luke 20:15-16
- Matthew 20:1-2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H64, H1612, H3657, H3661, H3754, H3755, H8284, G289, G290

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:1-3
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 9:25

voice, voices

Definition:

The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: synecdoche)
- To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
- Sometimes the word "voice" may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42-45
- Luke 09:34-36
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 12:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456, G5586

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:3-4

vow, vows, vowed

Definition:

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: promise, oath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:22-24
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10 General Notes

walk, walks, walked, walking

Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Kings 02:1-4
- Colossians 02:6-7
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 13:8-11
- Micah 04:2-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful

Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To "watch out" is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- To "keep watch over" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:14-15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H5894, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G70, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

Uses:

- Nehemiah 11:19-21

watchtower, watchtowers, tower

Definition:

The term "watchtower" refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term "watchtower" is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: adversary, watch)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Psalm 062:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H803, H969, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4024, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6076, H6438, H6836, H6844, G4444

Uses:

- Nehemiah 12:38-39

water, waters, watered, watering

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of "waters" refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we "go through the waters" he will be with us.
- The phrase "many waters" emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To "water" livestock and other animals means to "provide water for" them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of "living waters" for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase "living water" to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, "draw water" could be translated as "pull water up from a well with a bucket."
- "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21-22
- John 04:9-10
- John 04:13-14
- John 04:15-16
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:25-27
- Nehemiah 4:21-23
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:11
- Nehemiah 9:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:20-21
- Nehemiah 12:36-37
- Nehemiah 13:1-3

wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23-25
- Genesis 09:20-21
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:9-10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18-19

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a "winepress" was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term "winepress" is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, wrath)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:1-2
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Revelation 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1660, H3342, H6333, G3025, G5276

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:15

word, words

Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see word of God

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: word of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Colossians 04:2-4
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- John 01:1-3
- John 01:14-15
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 07:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:11-12

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "works," "deeds," and "acts" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term "work" refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person's "work" can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as "working."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in "every good work" or "every good deed."
- The term "work" can also have the broader meaning of "service" or "ministry." For example, the expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as, "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:11-12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Exodus 34:10-11

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:15-16
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:3-5
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 4:10-11
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 4:17-18
- Nehemiah 4:21-23
- Nehemiah 5:16-17
- Nehemiah 6:3-4
- Nehemiah 6:8-9
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 11:10-12
- Nehemiah 11:15-16
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:10-11
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

worship

Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally "bow down" or "prostrate oneself" to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:5-7
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

*13:04 Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods." ***14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. ***17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. ***25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, '**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.'" ***26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. ***47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. ***49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 9:5-6

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Romans 01:18-19
- Romans 05:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

Uses:

- Nehemiah 13:16-18

written

Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
- Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, prophet, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:28-29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:24-25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:11-13
- Matthew 04:5-6
- Revelation 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3789, H7559, G1125

Uses:

- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 7:5
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 13:1-3

Yahweh

Facts:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name "Yahweh" comes from the word that means, to "be" or to "exist."
- Possible meanings of "Yahweh" include, "he is" or "I am" or "the one who causes to be."
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, "Yahweh," as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term "Yahweh" does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun "I" or "me," the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

Translation Suggestions:

- "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "living one" or "the one who is" or "he who is alive."
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 9:3-4
- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 10:34-36

year, years

Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31-33
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:1-2
- Exodus 12:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:1-2

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark of the covenant, David, Jotham, Nehemiah, reign, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 01:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G4524

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:3-5
- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 11:10-12
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerrubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the temple during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Darius, Ezra, Jehoshaphat, Jeroboam, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel)

Bible References:

- Ezra 05:1-2
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Zechariah 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2148

Uses:

- Nehemiah 8:4-5
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:5-6
- Nehemiah 12:36-37

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Babylon, Ezekiel, kingdom of Israel, Jehoiachin, Jeremiah, Josiah, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:15-16
- Jeremiah 37:1-2
- Jeremiah 39:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6667

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:1-3

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

> *...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...* (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

> But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

   - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
     - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
   - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
     - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
     - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
     - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
   - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
     - Today the people in this house have been saved...
     - Today God has saved the people in this house...
   - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

○ The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

  ○ He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:1-3
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 8:4-5
- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 8:6-8
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:11-12
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:16-17
- Nehemiah 13:12-14

- Translators whose language uses passive forms will need to understand for what purpose the passive is used in any particular passage in the Bible, and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that same purpose in their translation of the passage.

Examples from the Bible

> Then the soldiers coiled together some thorns to make a crown, and they put it on Jesus' head. They clothed him in a purple robe. (John 19:2 ULT)

This passage focuses on what the soldiers did to Jesus. It does not matter who made the crown or the robe. In this part of the story, the soldiers and what they did to Jesus is important.

> When it was morning, the entire group of chief priests and elders of the people plotted against Jesus so that they might put him to death. (Matthew 27:1 ULT)

In this verse, the important people are the chief priests and the elders. They are the subjects of the active verbs "plotted" and "might put to death."

> This is an example of a passive that English uses.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it would be better to translate without a passive form, then here are some strategies you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression such as "they" or "people" or "someone."

(3) Use a different verb.

The passive sentence used the verb "given," which is made up of the passive helping verb "was" and the passive participle "given." To change this to an active form, make a sentence with the active form of that verb, "give."

- **They gave him a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.**

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)

- It would be better for him if they put a millstone around his neck and threw him into the sea.

- It would be better for him if someone put a millstone around his neck and threw him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- ○ The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - ○ It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
  - ○ It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - ○ He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:3
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 2:13-14
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 3:3-5
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:16-17
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 6:10-11
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:3-4

- Nehemiah 7:5
- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:11-12
- Nehemiah 8:11-12
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 10:39
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 12:43
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:4-5
- Nehemiah 13:10-11
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:19-20
- Nehemiah 13:19-20

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information.**

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge)** with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

    - **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
        - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
    - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
        - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
            - ◇ Or:
        - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
    - **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
        - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

    - **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
        - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
    - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
        - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 1:3
- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 02 General Notes
- Nehemiah 2:15-16
- Nehemiah 03 General Notes
- Nehemiah 3:13
- Nehemiah 3:13
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 5:1-3
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:6-8
- Nehemiah 5:16-17
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 6:8-9
- Nehemiah 7:73
- Nehemiah 8:4-5
- Nehemiah 8:9-10
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:9-10
- Nehemiah 9:9-10
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 10:1-3
- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 12:1-3

- Nehemiah 12:10-11
- Nehemiah 12:44-45
- Nehemiah 13:10-11
- Nehemiah 13:21-22
- Nehemiah 13:23-24

Background Information

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information.** The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig.

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter was the best hunter in the village" and "it was his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:

  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- Translators need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said… (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB) English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

  - "When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

  - "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 2:1-2

Biblical Distance

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
———	———
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)

  - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half kubits; its width will be one kubit and a half; and its height will be one kubit and a half.”

- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

  - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

  - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be 3 3/4 feet; its width will be 2 1/4 feet; and its height will be 2 1/4 feet.”

- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

  - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter).”

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
  - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter[1]; its width will be two thirds of a meter [2]; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.” The footnotes would look like:
    - ◇ [1] two and a half cubits
    - ◇ [2] one cubit and a half

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:13

Biblical Money

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
——	——	——
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
——	——	——
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see Copy or Borrow Words)

  - ”The one owed five hundred denali, and the other owed fifty denali.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)

- Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

  - ”The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)

- Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

  - ”The one owed five hundred days’ wages, and the other owed fifty days’ wages.”

- Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

  - ”The one owed five hundred denarii[1], and the other owed fifty denarii.[2]” (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:
    - ◇ [1] five hundred days’s wages
    - ◇ [2] fifty day’s wages

- Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

  - ”The one owed five hundred denarii[1], and the other owed fifty denarii.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)
    - ◇ [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Biblical Weight

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term "shekel" means "weight," and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
——————————	————-	————	—————
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as ".57 grams" readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a gram."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as "3300 grams" or "3.3 kilograms," it can be translated as "about three and one half kilograms."
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)

  - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles."

- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

  - "The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms."

- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

  - "The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds."

- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

  - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)."

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

  - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.[1]"
    - ◇ The footnote would look like:
  - [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.### Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:70-72

Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word "and." Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

> King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was "very old."

> … he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself … (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared "many false things to say."

> … as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish–not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

   - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
     - ”You have decided to prepare false things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

   - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
     - ”King David was very old.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

   - **… a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”
     - ” … a lamb without any blemish at all ...”

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 9:14-15

2. If necessary, add the missing words in an order that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> … the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

> … the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and he makes **Sirion skip** like a young ox.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
  - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous

- **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight."** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight."

- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:3-5
- Nehemiah 3:8-10
- Nehemiah 3:8-10
- Nehemiah 3:11-12
- Nehemiah 3:16-17
- Nehemiah 3:18-19
- Nehemiah 3:20-21
- Nehemiah 3:22-24
- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 3:31-32
- Nehemiah 6:1-2
- Nehemiah 7:19-22
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:37-38

The writer is telling people who are not apostles what the apostles saw, so the exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would be used here if the language has them.

Translation Strategies

If the pronoun "we" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. Otherwise, here are other options.

1. Decide whether the meaning of the pronoun is inclusive or exclusive, and then use the form that people in your language would use for that meaning.

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

> … the shepherds said one to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:30-31
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 10:37-38
- Nehemiah 10:39

Abraham was speaking to God. He referred to God in the second person as "my Lord" instead of "you."

> Therefore let the king send and call the man of God whom you sent to the king. (2 Kings 1:13 ULB)

The man referred to the king in the third person as "the king" and "you." He did this to show honor to the king.

Translation Strategies

If the use of the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronouns "I" or "you."
2. Simply use the first person ("I") or the second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronouns "I" or "you."

> But David said to Saul, "Your servant used to keep his father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)
>> But David said to Saul, "I, your servant, used to keep my father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or the second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "... Do you have an arm like God's? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
>> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
>> "... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like mine?

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you." He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your."

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."
2. Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."

   - **But David said to Saul, "Your servant used to keep his father's sheep."** (1 Samuel 17:34)
     - But David said to Saul, "I, your servant, used to keep my father's sheep."

2. Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

   - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like God's? Can you thunder with a voice like him?** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
     - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?"
   - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
     - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 2:13-14

Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:17-18

Fractions

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

> For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULB)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

> a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULB)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have "-th" added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
——	——
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
——	——
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

> Now to one half of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other half, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULB)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase "one half of the tribe of Manasseh" refers one of those groups. The phrase "the other half" refers to the other group.

> The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULB)

If all the people were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

> You must also prepare a fourth of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULB)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UDB.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

   - **A third of the ocean became red like blood** (Revelation 8:8 ULB)
     - It was like they divided the ocean into three parts, and one part of the ocean became blood.
   - **then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
     - … then you must divide an ephah of fine flour into ten parts and divide a hin of oil into two parts. Then mix three of those parts of the flour with one of the parts of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

   - **two thirds of a shekel** (1 Samuel 13:21 ULB)
     - eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UDB)
   - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
     - six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with two liters of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UDB)

3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

   - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
     - six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:8-10
- Nehemiah 3:11-12
- Nehemiah 3:16-17
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:15-16
- Nehemiah 4:21-23
- Nehemiah 10:32-33
- Nehemiah 10:37-38

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as "the first month" or "the second month" refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

> You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Abib. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

> You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (see Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)
- Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

    ○ At that time, you will appear before me in the first month of the year, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- Use the months that people know.

    ○ At that time, you will appear before me in the month of March, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
    ○ It will always be a statute for you that on the day I choose in late September you must humble yourselves and do no work."

- State clearly what season the month occurred in.

    ○ It will always be a statute for you that in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

- Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

    ○ It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn[1] you must humble yourselves and do no work.
       ◇ The footnote would look like:
    ○ [1]The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 7:73
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 9:1-2

How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name "Melchizedek" means "king of righteousness," and also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

> You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against
> you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and
"Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well
> was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beerlahairoi" means
"Well of the Living One who sees me."

> She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11
> ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds
like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

> It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue
> (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to,
   you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said
   about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is
   said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of
   copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other
   name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when
   it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when
   the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the
   source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to,
   you can add a word to clarify it.

を削除

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
- **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
  - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

   - **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
     - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

   - **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
     - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

   - **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
     - ... a young man named Paul[1] The footnote would look like:
       - [1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
   - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
     - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

   - **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
     - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

- ◇ [1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.
- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
  - ○ But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
  - ○ It came about in Iconium that Paul[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ [1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:4-8
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:9-14
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:15-21
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 10:22-27
- Nehemiah 11:3-4
- Nehemiah 11:5-6
- Nehemiah 11:7-9
- Nehemiah 11:10-12
- Nehemiah 11:13-14

- Nehemiah 11:15-16
- Nehemiah 11:17-18
- Nehemiah 11:19-21
- Nehemiah 11:19-21
- Nehemiah 11:22-24
- Nehemiah 11:25-27
- Nehemiah 11:28-30
- Nehemiah 11:31-36
- Nehemiah 11:31-36
- Nehemiah 12:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:4-7
- Nehemiah 12:8-9
- Nehemiah 12:10-11
- Nehemiah 12:12-14
- Nehemiah 12:12-14
- Nehemiah 12:15-21
- Nehemiah 12:15-21
- Nehemiah 12:22-23
- Nehemiah 12:24-26
- Nehemiah 12:29-30
- Nehemiah 12:32-35
- Nehemiah 12:36-37
- Nehemiah 12:38-39
- Nehemiah 12:40-42
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:23-24
- Nehemiah 13:23-24
- Nehemiah 13:28-29
- Nehemiah 13:28-29

Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to
> him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think
> that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarliy mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most, "most of the time," "hardly any" or "rarely."

> Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

> If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

> They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

> But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> ... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
3. For a generalization, add a word like "most" or "almost" to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

   - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
     - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.

2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."

   - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
     - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
   - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
     - "And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words."

3. For a generalization, add a word like "most" or "almost" to show that the generalization is not exact.

   - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

○ Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him."
○ Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him."

4. For a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

● **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
   ○ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Uses:

● Nehemiah 2:3
● Nehemiah 4:1-3
● Nehemiah 4:12-14
● Nehemiah 4:17-18
● Nehemiah 8:1-3
● Nehemiah 8:9-10
● Nehemiah 13:12-14

Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, "You are telling me a lie")
- Do not push the envelope (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme")
- This house is under water (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value")
- We are painting the town red (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
> (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

   - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
     - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
   - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
     - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
   - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
     - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

   - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
     - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
   - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
     - I am crying my eyes out

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 1:8-9

- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:4-5
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 6:1-2
- Nehemiah 6:12-14
- Nehemiah 7:6-7
- Nehemiah 7:61-63
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:30-31

Litotes

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are "no," "not," "none," and "never." The opposite of "good" is "bad." Someone could say that something is "not bad" to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

> Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are not the least among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

   - **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless.** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
     - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good."
   - **Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
     - "Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
     - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter."

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:20-21

Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

> I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

> From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

    -   **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth …** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
        -   I praise you, Father, Lord of everything …
    -   **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
        -   In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

    -   **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
        -   I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
    -   **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
        -   He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

Uses:

-   Nehemiah 1:6-7

We often speak of one thing as if it were something else because this helps us to picture how the two things are similar.

For example, people use "dead" metaphors so often that speakers of the language do not regard them as figures of speech. Examples in English include the following:

- Turn up the heat. ("heat" represents "intensity")
- Let's fuel the debate. ("fuel" represents "make more active")

Here is another example: Jesus said, 'Go and tell that fox...,'" where "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are "table leg," "family tree," "leaf" meaning a page in a book, and "crane" meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably "heal" meaning "repair," and "sick" meaning "spiritually powerless because of sin."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going *up*," "A *highly* intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The heat is going *down*," and "The stock market *took a tumble*."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat *up*." MORE is spoken of as UP.
- "Let us *go ahead* with our debate." DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- "You *defend* your theory well." ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- "A *flow* of words" WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patternsand the pages it will direct you to.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his "love") is the **topic**, and "red rose" is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose's beauty is not identical to a woman's beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker's message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

> Jesus said to them. "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and
> he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is "I," and the **image** is "bread." Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed break every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

> Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is "you") with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are "we" and "you," and the images are "clay and "potter." The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees."
> The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread."
> (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a "live" metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

   - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
     - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.

2. If the metaphor seems to be a "live" metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

   - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
     - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

   - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
     - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

   - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
     - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.

3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

   - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
     - "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand."
     - "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand."

4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

   - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
     - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.

   - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
     - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
   - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
     - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick.

6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
  - I will make you become people who gather men.
  - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 5:12-13
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 9:5-6
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:16-17
- Nehemiah 9:23-24
- Nehemiah 9:25
- Nehemiah 9:26-27
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 11:13-14
- Nehemiah 13:28-29

Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

> and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

> The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

> Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> ... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

   - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
     - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

   - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
     - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
     - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
   - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
     - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Nehemiah 1:8-9
- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 1:10-11
- Nehemiah 2:7-8
- Nehemiah 2:11-12
- Nehemiah 2:17-18
- Nehemiah 4:7-9
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 4:19-20
- Nehemiah 4:21-23
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 6:8-9
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 7:5

- Nehemiah 7:6-7
- Nehemiah 7:39-42
- Nehemiah 9:9-10
- Nehemiah 9:26-27
- Nehemiah 9:26-27
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 9:28-29
- Nehemiah 9:30-31
- Nehemiah 12:43
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Nehemiah 13:15
- Nehemiah 13:21-22

Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as "five" or as numerals, such as "5." Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

> When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

   * I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

   * I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

   * I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

   * I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

   * I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

> When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:13
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 5:16-17
- Nehemiah 5:18-19
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 7:8-10
- Nehemiah 7:11-14
- Nehemiah 7:15-18
- Nehemiah 7:19-22
- Nehemiah 7:23-26
- Nehemiah 7:27-30
- Nehemiah 7:31-34
- Nehemiah 7:35-38
- Nehemiah 7:39-42
- Nehemiah 7:43-45
- Nehemiah 7:57-60
- Nehemiah 7:61-63
- Nehemiah 7:66-67
- Nehemiah 7:68-69
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 7:70-72

- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 7:70-72
- Nehemiah 11:5-6
- Nehemiah 11:7-9
- Nehemiah 11:10-12
- Nehemiah 11:13-14
- Nehemiah 11:13-14
- Nehemiah 11:17-18
- Nehemiah 11:19-21

Ordinal Numbers

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
——	——	——
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
——	——	——
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.

   - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

     ○ There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim, … another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
     ○ There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim, … the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.

   - **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.** (Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

     ○ A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

   - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

     ○ They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, … Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 1:1-2

- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:28-30
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Nehemiah 6:5-6
- Nehemiah 6:15-16
- Nehemiah 7:73
- Nehemiah 8:1-3
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 8:18
- Nehemiah 9:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:30-31

Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

> Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

> The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
> keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

The second completes what is said in the first.

> I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
> and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

> For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
> but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

> A gentle answer turns away wrath,
> but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

   - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
     - "Until now you have deceived me with your lies."

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."
  - ○ "Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does."
- **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
  - ○ "For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel."

2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
  - ○ "Yahweh truly sees everything a person does."

3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
  - ○ "All you have done is lie to me."
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
  - ○ "Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does."

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:12-13

Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

   - **... sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
     - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

   - **... sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word "as."
     - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

   - **... even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the "wind and the sea as if they are able to hear" and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
     - He even controls the winds and the sea.

Note: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- Nehemiah 6:17-19
- Nehemiah 9:32-34

> John's disciples came to him ... (John 3:25)

Contents - In the example below, the crowns were made with gold.

> ... on their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7)

Part and whole - In the example below, the door was part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at the **door of the king's palace** ... (2 Samuel 11:9)

When the relationship between the two nouns is *possession*, you may be able to use a *possessive pronoun* to help you understand it. In the examples below, notice how the *possessive pronoun* **his** may be used with both nouns. This is one of the characteristics of possession. If you can do something like this, then there is probably a possessive relationship between the two nouns.

* the love of God - God's love - his love
* the hope of Israel - Israel's hope - its hope

There are other relationships between nouns that the *possessive pronoun* will not fit. In the examples below, notice that the *possessive pronoun* does not work.

The description tells us about the noun following it. In the example below, one of the nouns refers to a *person*, and the other noun refers to a kind of *person*.

> ... there will be ... a **baptism of repentance** ... (Mark 1:4)

Translation Strategies

If possession is a natural way to represent a particular relationship between two ideas, then consider using it. If it would be confusing, consider the following strategies.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Then the disciples of John came to him ..., (Matthew 9:14 ULB)

Material - In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like crowns of gold (Revelation 9:7)

Contents - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULB)

Part of a whole - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at the door of the king's palace (2 Samuel 11:9 ULB)

Part of a group - In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

To each one of us has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULB)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject - Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, John baptized people.

The **baptism** of John, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me." (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, Christ loves us.

Who will separate us from the **love** of Christ? (Romans 3:35)

Object - Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, people love money.

For the **love** of money is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULB)

Instrument - Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords.

then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings the **punishment** of the sword (Job 19:29 ULB)

Representation - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their baptism represented their repentance.

As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching a **baptism** of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULB)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UDB. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in **bold** print.

   - **On their heads were something like crowns of gold** (Revelation 9:7)
     - ”On their heads were **gold** crowns”

2. Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

   - **... Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink ... will not lose his reward.** (Mark 9:41 ULB)
     - ... Whoever gives you a cup that **has** water in it to drink ... will not lose his reward.
   - **Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath** (Proverbs 11:4 ULB)
     - Wealth is worthless on the day when God **shows** his wrath.
     - Wealth is worthless on the day when God **punishes** people because of his wrath.

3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

   - **Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen the punishment of Yahweh your God,** (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULB)
     - Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen how Yahweh your God **punished** the people of Egypt.
   - **You will only observe and see the punishment of the wicked.** (Psalms 91:8 ULB)
     - You will only observe and see how Yahweh **punishes** the wicked.
   - **... you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.** (Acts 2:38 ULB)
     - ... you will receive the Holy Spirit, whom God will **give** to you.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 3:1-2
- Nehemiah 3:14-15

Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

Description

Pronouns are words that people use in place of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone. The most common type of pronoun is personal.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)

    - Exclusive and Inclusive "We"

- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)

    - Forms of You

- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)

    - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself in the mirror.** - The word "himself" refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- **Who built the house?**

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They tell more about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house that John built.** The clause "that John built" tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man who built the house.** The clause "who built the house" tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen this here?**
- **Who is that over there?**

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to anyone.**
- **Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.**
- **They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.**

In the last example, "they" and "you" just refer to people in general.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 10:1-3

Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used theis question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your langauge what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

   - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
     - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
   - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
     - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

   - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
     - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”
   - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
     - You should not insult God's high priest!
   - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
     - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
   - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
     - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

   - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
     - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?

4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your langauge what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:3
- Nehemiah 2:19-20
- Nehemiah 04 General Notes
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 4:1-3
- Nehemiah 5:9-11
- Nehemiah 6:3-4
- Nehemiah 6:10-11
- Nehemiah 13:10-11
- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:16-18
- Nehemiah 13:21-22
- Nehemiah 13:25-27
- Nehemiah 13:25-27

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, then consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use.

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. **If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike.** However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

   - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are among wolves.

     > See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.**

   - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

     > For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword.

2. **If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture.** Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

   - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** ... (Matthew 10:16 ULB) — If people do not know what wolves are, or that wolves are very dangerous and attack sheep, you can use some other animal that attacks sheep or another animal.

     > See, I send you out among people who, **like wild dogs,** would want to harm you.

Examples from the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

   - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
     - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
   - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
     - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

   - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- ○ See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - ○ How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
  - ○ If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
  - ○ See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - ○ How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Uses:

- Nehemiah 9:11

Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No." Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes."

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.

   - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
     - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
   - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
     - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

   - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
     - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
   - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
     - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

   - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
   - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
     - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Uses:

- Nehemiah 5:12-13

Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> the Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful …?" (Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

> I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

  - **"My soul exalts the Lord."** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
    - "I exalt the Lord."
  - **…the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ○ ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - ○ I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Uses:

- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:1-2
- Nehemiah 2:4-6
- Nehemiah 2:15-16
- Nehemiah 4:4-6
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Nehemiah 6:1-2
- Nehemiah 6:3-4
- Nehemiah 6:8-9
- Nehemiah 7:1-2
- Nehemiah 9:7-8
- Nehemiah 9:20-21
- Nehemiah 10:37-38

Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> your sins … will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

  - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

  - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins … will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

  - ○ your sins ... will be white like milk
  - ○ your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

  - ○ Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

  - ○ We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

  - ○ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

  - ○ We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

  - ○ to him who made the sun and the moon

Uses:

- Nehemiah 7:64-65
- Nehemiah 8:13-15
- Nehemiah 12:27-28